

۸ اپورڈیرب راکی امنہار

The logo consists of the word "Drupal" in a bold, blue, sans-serif font. A small "TM" symbol is positioned in the top right corner of the letter "l".

Drupal™

The text "USER GUIDE" is written in a large, white, sans-serif font, centered on a blue background.

USER GUIDE

---

## ل آپ ورد ی رب را کی امن ہار

# تسوییف

i.	راشتونا زوجم ..... مدقق ۵	.....	.....
i.1.	فادها و بطاخم .....	.....	.....
i.2.	یهنان امزاس .....	.....	.....
i.3.	تالکشم شرمازگ .....	.....	.....
i.4.	امن هار نی دعاوچ .....	.....	.....
i.5.	امن هار وی رانس .....	.....	.....
i.6.	لابورد گرد .....	.....	.....
1.	اوتحم تی ری دم متسری س کی ناونع هب لابورد: موهفم .....	1	.....
1.1.	اهنوزفا: موهفم .....	3	.....
1.2.	اهبلاق: موهفم .....	4	.....
1.3.	اهاعیزوت: موهفم .....	5	.....
1.4.	هداد عاونا: موهفم .....	6	.....
1.5.	لابورد هژورپ: موهفم .....	7	.....
1.6.	لابورد زوجم: موهفم .....	9	.....
2.	تی اس یحارت .....	11	.....
2.1.	بلاق کی رد اهای حان: موهفم .....	11	.....
2.2.	تی اس حرط یزی راهمان رب .....	12	.....
2.3.	ی اوتحم یاهاتی دوجوم و اهدلی ف: موهفم .....	14	.....
2.4.	رالوزام ی اوتحم: موهفم .....	16	.....
2.5.	ی اوتحم راتخ اس یزی راهمان رب .....	17	.....
2.6.	ی راتس اری و راکش درگ: موهفم .....	20	.....
3.	بصن .....	22	.....
3.1.	رورس یاهزاین شیپ: موهفم .....	22	.....
3.2.	ی فاضا یاه رازبا: موهفم .....	23	.....
3.3.	بصن یارب ی زاساه داما .....	25	.....
3.4.	بصن دنی آرف یارج ا .....	28	.....
4.	تی اس هی اپ ی دنب برکی پ .....	35	.....
4.1.	Concept: Administrative Overview .....	35	.....
4.2.	Editing Basic Site Information .....	38	.....
4.3.	Installing a Module .....	40	.....
4.4.	Uninstalling Unused Modules .....	41	.....
4.5.	Configuring User Account Settings .....	44	.....
4.6.	Configuring the Theme .....	47	.....
5.	داس ھتفص تی ری دم .....	52	.....
5.1.	Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs .....	52	.....
5.2.	Creating a Content Item .....	53	.....
5.3.	Editing a Content Item .....	55	.....
5.4.	Editing with the In-Place Editor .....	57	.....
5.5.	Designating a Front Page for your Site .....	59	.....



5.6. Concept: Menu .....	61
5.7. Adding a Page to the Navigation .....	62
5.8. Changing the Order of Navigation .....	65
6. یاوتچم راتخ اس میظننت .....	68
6.1. Adding a Content Type .....	68
6.2. Deleting a Content Type .....	73
6.3. Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type .....	75
6.4. Concept: Reference Fields .....	80
6.5. Concept: Taxonomy .....	81
6.6. Setting Up a Taxonomy .....	83
6.7. Adding a Reference Field .....	88
6.8. Concept: Forms and Widgets .....	91
6.9. Changing Content Entry Forms .....	92
6.10. Concept: View Modes and Formatters .....	96
6.11. Changing Content Display .....	97
6.12. Concept: Image Styles .....	100
6.13. Setting Up an Image Style .....	101
6.14. Concept: Responsive Image Styles .....	105
6.15. Concept: Text Formats and Editors .....	106
6.16. Configuring Text Formats and Editors .....	107
7. یربراکی اهاباسح تیریدم .....	109
7.1. Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions .....	109
7.2. Concept: The User Account .....	110
7.3. Creating a Role .....	112
7.4. Creating a User Account .....	113
7.5. Assigning Permissions to a Role .....	117
7.6. Changing a User's Roles .....	119
7.7. Assigning Authors to Content .....	122
8. اهکالب .....	125
8.1. Concept: Blocks .....	125
8.2. Creating A Custom Block .....	125
8.3. Placing a Block in a Region .....	128
9. ژا ھدافتتسا ابتسدھف داجیا Views .....	131
9.1. Concept: Uses of Views .....	131
9.2. Concept: The Parts of a View .....	132
9.3. Creating a Content List View .....	134
9.4. Duplicating a View .....	138
9.5. Adding a Block Display to a View .....	143
10. دوختی اس ندرک ھنابزدنچ .....	149
10.1. Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation .....	149
10.2. Adding a Language .....	150

10.3. Configuring Content Translation .....	152
10.4. Translating Content .....	155
10.5. Translating Configuration .....	157
11. دوختی اسی زاسی شرافس و دعسوت .....	161
11.1. Finding Modules .....	161
11.2. Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode .....	166
11.3. Downloading and Installing a Module from <i>Drupal.org</i> .....	169
11.4. Finding Themes .....	172
11.5. Downloading and Installing a Theme from <i>Drupal.org</i> .....	175
11.6. Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files .....	179
11.7. Concept: Development Sites .....	182
11.8. Making a Development Site .....	183
11.9. Using Composer and Git to Download Files .....	186
11.10. Deploying New Site Features .....	189
11.11. Synchronizing Configuration Versions .....	192
12. تالکشم لح و یوگشیپ .....	195
12.1. Concept: Cache .....	195
12.2. Clearing the Cache .....	196
12.3. Concept: Data Backups .....	198
12.4. Concept: Log .....	200
12.5. Concept: Status Report .....	201
13. یوادھکن و تینما .....	203
13.1. Concept: Cron .....	203
13.2. Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks .....	204
13.3. Concept: Security and Regular Updates .....	206
13.4. Keeping Track of Updates .....	208
13.5. Updating the Core Software .....	209
13.6. Updating a Module .....	211
13.7. Updating a Theme .....	215
14. رخآنخس .....	218
14.1. Connecting with the Community .....	218
14.2. Getting Support .....	220
14.3. Learning More .....	221
ن اگڙاو .....	223
هیامن .....	232
A. مضمونی مضم .....	242
A.1. Guide-Wide Attributions .....	242

٥ مدقم

## راشتہ زوج میں i.1.

تى ارىپك لماش ھ داش ھ داشون لابورد سروس نپوا ھزورپ ھ ب ناگدىن كاتكراشم طسوت امنهارنى ا  
2015 ھل ماج زا دنس نى ا رد ھحفص ره. درىگ رارق ھدافتسا دروم (CC BY-SA 2.0) شىامن ار ھحفص ن آن اگدىن كاتكراشم تىرسەرف ھ كتسا ھحفصى اهتنار دەرتراپع كى لماش ھحفص نى مەھ  
ھزورپ تىرىدم و ھ مجرت، يلىك شىاري و يارب دىن اوتايىم نىنچمە. دەدىمىم [#### A.1, "Guide-Wide Attributions"](#). دىن ك ھعچارم.

دوجم عزیزوت و ریغت، یعنی گاتشون و ناکمای درف ره هب، تسا [GPL](#) اب هباشم هک [CC BY-SA](#)# زوجم  
بدن درگ تی اعترافی دعاوی هک مادران، ددهلم ار راک نی مامات ای شخوب رد دوجوم تاریغت

- ۱۰) دین ک هدهاشم از زوجم رتشیب تاعمال طایارب دین ک مهارف اربسانم رابتعا.
  - ۱۱) دین ک مهارف زوجم هب دنوی پ کی.
  - ۱۲) ریخ ای دن الات فرگ تروص تاریخت ای آ دین ک صخشم.
  - ۱۳) دی ۵۵ هئارا دنس نیمه زوجم اب قباطم ار دوخ راک.

ن اگ دن ن کات ک راش م

زا، رد Jennifer Hodgdon و Jojo Alphonso طسوت دھفص نیا شیاری و شراغن Red Crackle، ##### رد ی دارفن ناگدن کات کراشم طسوت ۲۰۱۶ تیاری پک، ##### تسا هت فرگ تروص ##### #####.

رتسهیب تایئزج یارب بی دارفنا ناگدننکاتکراشم طسوت ۲۰۱۵ تیارلپک :تیارلپک نالعا  
#### i.1, ##### ##### زوح متحت دین ک هدهاشم ار [CC BY-SA 2.0](#)

## فادها و بطاخم

ل اپوردی اوتحم تیری دم متسی س زایلقادح شناد هک تمسا هدش هتشون ی دارفا ی ارب رتشیب امنهار نی اتی اس ب و کی ی اوتحم ی راده گن و، ی زاساتی اس، تیری دم، بصن تراهم اهان آه ب امنهار لخاد تاعوضوم. دن راد راک ه برجت ل اپورد نیشی پ ااهه خسن اب هک تمسا ن ارب راک ی ارب نی ن چمه امنهار. دهیم شزومآ اریل اپورد. دن ن کی ن اس رزورب یل عف خسن ی ارب ار دوخ شناد دنهاوخ خیم و دن یاهت شاد.

امن‌هار نی اکردی ارب هنی مژلس پ شن‌اد خ رب هب، دی راد ار ن آی گارف دصق هک ل اپورد هبنج ن آس اسا رب رازف‌امرن زا هدافتسای گن و گچ رب امن‌هار و تسا روصتم آشن‌اد و تن رتنی اای مومع یاهی اان اوت دی راد زاین امش هیل وا شن‌اد رب ار ضرف، رورس‌اب و کی یور ل اپورد بصن اب طبت‌رم تم‌سق، هن‌ومن ی ارب. دراد زکرم‌تی ری دم اب طبت‌رم تم‌سق، هباشم روط هب. دن‌ادیم ن آهب اهالی افلاق‌تن‌ا و ی‌ن‌اب‌زیم سی‌ورس هی‌هت‌ی ارب دن‌ادیم هرف کی ن‌درک‌رب و تی‌اس‌ب و هب دورو ی‌ان اوت رب ار ضرف اوتحم.

دی ناوتب دی اب، امن هارنی اه عل اطم زا سپ

- دین ک ی ذی راح طیل اپ ورد تی اس ک ی ارب ار او تح م ی رام عم
  - دی زاس ب ار هدش ی ذی راح طتی اس
  - دین ک تی ری دم ار دوخ تی اس
  - دن اه دشن رکذ امن هار نی ا رد ه ک دی زاد رپب ی تا دن تسم ه عل اطم ه ب ، دوخ شن اد ه عس وت ی ارب
  - دین ک رار قرب طاب بت رال اپ ورد ی ناهج ی رب را کاه عمام اج اب

ن اگ دن ن کات ک راش م

جینری هودگدن Jennifer Hodgdon.

### ۱.۳. ام زاس دان ۵

کی ای راک کی ماجنای گن و گچ کی مادرک ره هک، تاعوض و سوم زای اه عوچم ل ماش امن هار نیا  
(##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### #####) ####. ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### \_ ##### \_ ##### \_ #  
##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### \_ ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### #####.

مه زا ادج ی اهلنی رمث و میه افم هارمه هب، دن ااهدش ی دن باهو رگ ی دن امزبی ترت کی رد لصف تروص هب تاعوضوم نی ازا ری گاهرهب ارب. دوش هداد حرش ن آب طبت رم نی رمث س پس دنوش حرطم مووه فم ادت با هکی رووط هب دین ادلیم هکی تاعوضوم و دین ک دعل اطم تسا ددمآ هک تروص نامه هب ار امنهار مامت هک تسا رتهب، ن اکما دارفا رث کا بدن ک ارجا دوخ تی اسیور ار هدش هداد حرش تانزی رمث هک دی شاب هتشاد دای هب. دین اردگب ار دن ری گاهیم ارف رتهب ار راک کی نداد ماجن اب.

حق‌الاع دروم عوضوم کی هب عی رس ی سرتسدی ارب اوتحم لودج و سی دنا زا دین اوتفیم ، دی ۵۵ حی‌جرت رگا تسدرهف مزالی اهندن وی پهارمه هب اردن آزاینشی پشنهاد عوضوم ره ، درکی ورنی ادوبه بی ارب . دین ک دافتسا



تاجیضوت هک — دیزادنیب **#####** هب یهگن دیهایخ دیاش دیزادرپلیم هعالاطم هب هک روط نیمه لماش اردیتاشیب تایئزج هک یتاعوضوم هب دنویپ و امنهار نیا تاحالطصا زا کی ره دراپرد رصتخم دهدلیم هیارا، دنوشلیم.

نآگدننکاتکراشم

طسوت هدش هتشون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## تالکشم شرازگ i.4.

فادها

هلمج زا، امنهار نیا ابلکشم کی شرازگ:

- دنتسین درادن اتسایاهویش هب هک هتسد نآی تسردان تاعالطا
- دننکلیمن راک هک یاهام اگ
- دنتسین کی نتمی اوتحم اب هک عوضوم اب طبترم روواصت
- موهفمان هتشون
- دهدحیضوت دناوتلیم نتم زا رتهب رووصت هک یاهاج
- حیحص تاجیضوت دوجو مدعا
- اهانآ دوجو مدعا و زاین درومیشنادیاهزاینشیپ
- یشیامن ویشراگن، یروتسدیاهاطخ
- اطخیاهدنویپ

### اهم‌اگ

1. دنشاب هدش حرطم لکشم لمماش هک یتاعوضوم ای عوضوم زای رادرباتشاددای.
2. [تسانآ تخاص نامزنونکا، دیرادن یربراک باسح رگا] هب دورو [Drupal.org](#).
3. هجفص هب هعجارم [User Guide issues ## Drupal.org](#).
4. دشاب هدشن شرازگی رگید درف طسوت نونکا مه امش لکشم هک دینک لصلاح نانیمطا:  
 امش عوضوم ای آدینیبب ات دینک شیوپ ار **Summary** نوتس، دراد دوجو زاب **issue** دنج اهن رگا •  
 کیلک اب دیناوتلیم هک دیناوخب ار **issue** دنج ات دشاب مزالتسانکمم. رویخ ای دنهلیم ششوب ار  
 دینک هعالاطم ارنآ **Summary** نوتس رد دوجوم دنویپ یور رب  
 هک یعوضوم ناوونع ای دوخ رظن دروم هژاویلک ندرک دراو اب، دشاب نالوط، زاب **issue** تسرهف رگا •  
 هک یعوضوم نادعه دش رتمک هب **Search for** یور کیلک و **issue** هبعچ لخاد دراد رارق اجنآ رد لکشم  
 رد لکشم هک دیزادرپب **issue** هعالاطم هب ای هدرک یسرب ار لکشم هصالخ هاگنآ. دینک ترداد بم  
 تسا اجنآ.

- کیل ک *Create a new issue* یور، تسا هدشن ش رازگ نون کا مه امش رظن دروم لکشم هک دیت فایرد رگا  
دیز ک رپ ریز قباطم ار لکشم ش رازگ و دیز ک

+

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Title	Short summary of the problem you found	Instructions in "Adding a Content Type" do not work
Category	Type of issue being reported	Bug report
Version	Version of the guide you found the problem in	8.x-0.x-dev
Issue summary	Details of the problem you found	In the "Adding a Content Type" topic, in step 3, when I clicked Save, I got the following error message: ...

1. ش رازگ رد ریزت اعال طا هک دی بای نانی مطا و دی ن او خب ددجم ار دی اهدرک دراو هک و Issue summary:  
بتسا هت فرگ رارق امش دی اهدرک ادی پ هک یل کشم زا لم اک حیضوت کی .  
تسا هدش ادی پ ن آ رد لکشم هک ی تاعوضوم ای عوضوم مان .  
[]تسنی نی سی لگن رگا [] دی ن او خلیم ن آ هب ار امن هار هک ی نابز .  
لم اش ار لکشم هک ی تاحفص ای هحفص هب دنوی پ ، دی ن او خلیم ی رگید تی اس یور ار امن هار رگا .  
دنوشایم
  2. دی ن ک کی لک issue یور داجی ای ارب .
  3. اب ، تسا او خ امش زا ی رت شی ب تاعمال طا هژورپ ناری دم زا ی کی رگا . دی ن زب رس issue هب زور دنچ ی ط دی هد خس اپ ن آ هب آگدی د زا هدافتسا .

to write with Jennifer Hoddon

## امن‌هارنیا دعاوچ

## اہزاں نشیپ و تائی ضرف

دريگاي م رظن رد ار ريز اه زاين شيپ و تاي ض رف امن هار نيا

- رتشی ب تاییزج یارب بتسا هدش ی دنباهقبط تاعوضوم ساسا رب امنهار نیا ##### i.3،  
دنتسه ##### تمسق کی لماش تاعوضوم ی رایسب. دینک هدهاشم ار #####

شنا در پایمیل صاعوض و رتہب کردی اربی بن اجتاع و ضروری اس ندرک تسریف ہے کہ رتشیب تایئزج ارب بتسا رظن دم زین دوشی من ہدایت شوپ ہے ہنی مذاشی پر دین کہداشم ار #### i.2, ##### # ##### # ##### #.

- دی اب ه کی اهراک نیعنی، دن زادرپایم ##### # # # # # ن درک تمسرهف ه ب نی رمت تاعوضومی رای سب دی ه ماجن ا دوخ تی اسی ور نی رمت نی ا نداد ماجن ا زا لب ق
  - ه اگش ورفی ارب تی اس کی داجیا رب بی نتبم بی وی رانس اب طبترم، تی اسی اه زای نشی پ تاصخ شم .
  - دین ک هدهاشم ار "##### i.6, ##### #####" رتشی ب تایئزجی ارب [ ] تسای زرواش ک تال و صحم هتش اد دای هب ار دوخ زاین دروم تاریی غت دی اب اما، دی زاس قبطنم دوخ وی رانس اب دی ن اوتوام ار اهانی رمت دش اب قبطنم نی رمت کی اب امش تی اس رگا دی ش اب
  - ی نمض زای نشی پ کی، "##### 3.4, ##### ##### ##### # # #" زا سپی دربراک تاعوضوم مامتی ارب دی وش ن آ دراویل صای ربراک با سح اب و دی ش اب ه درک بصن ور اوتحم تی ریدم رازفالمرن دی اب : دراد دوجوی اه زوجم مامت ضرفاشی پ تروص هب هک، دی اهدرک داجیا تی اس بصن ماگنه هکی ربراک با سح دن نام [ ] دراد ار مزال.
  - زای نشی پ شن اد دی اب، دی ن ک ارجا نی رمت کی رد ار اه اگ مامت و هعل اطم بی ترت هب ارتاعوضوم مامت رگا . دی ش اب هدرک هعل اظزم ذین ار تی اسی اه زای نشی پ و و

یونیورسٹی

بدن‌اهدش ۵ دافتسا امن‌هارنی‌ان تم رد ریز دع اووق

- ارب همادا رد ار شی امی پ تمسق .تسا مامش تی اس ب و یل صا ی ناشن ی انع م هب example.com ی ناشن دی ن ک ھ ده اشم دوخ تی اس ی لخ ادی اه لی ناشن ه را بر د رت شی ب ت ای ئ زج یور کیل ک :دن نام دی آی م *italics* تروص هب دی نی ب لای م دوخ تی اس ی رب را ک طبار رد هک ی ن ت م *Save* ی ل ب ق عوض و م کی رد هک ی ن ت م ھ ن ،تسا ی ل صا راز ف ا مر ن ر د دو ج و م ن ت م در و م ر د اه ن ت نی ا *configuration* .دی نی ب ب ی ل م ع ل ا رو ت س د نی ن ج ت سا ن ک م م ،شی اری و ه را بر د ی عوض و م ر د ،ن و م ن ی ارب .تسا ھ د ش در او *About* اما ،د ش ا ب کی ل اتی ا تروص هب ت سا ن ک م م *Edit* دی ن ک کی ل ک *About* ھ ح ف ص ی ال ا ب ر د *Edit* یور *About* .[ ] ت سا ھ د ش داجی ای ل ب ق عوض و م کی رد *About* ھ ح ف ص ھ ک ا رج ت سی ن

- دن باي م شىامن *italics* تروص هب دى دج تاحالطضا و اهلىاف مان، اهلىاشن.
  - دب اىم شىامن **monospace** تروص هب دوش دراو نامرف طخ طب حم رد روت سد بلاق رد دىاب هك ينتم دن نام:

drush cr

- هک دوشایم هدافتسا اهالی اف ی زاساهری خذی ارب ی لحوم دروم رد هشیمه directory هملک، امنهار نیا رد .  
[دننکلیم هراشا نآ هب folder مان اب دارفا ی خرب .]

## شی‌امی‌پ

یتی‌ری‌دم طبار رد هحفص دنج ای کی هب هک تسا زاین، امن‌هار‌نی‌ا رد نی‌رمت تاعوضوم رثکا ماجنا‌ی‌ارب رازف‌المن هک نامزد دینی‌بب اهل‌معل اروتس‌ددنی‌ا اب هباش‌م‌ی‌زیج‌تسان‌کمم. دین‌ک هع‌ارم دوخ‌تی‌اس تشداد‌دی‌هاوخ‌ی‌رت‌هب کرد دین‌ک بصن‌ار:

دی‌ورب Manage\_# #####\_Structure > Taxonomy (admin/structure/taxonomy) یتی‌ری‌دم‌ی‌ونم‌رد.

نی‌ا و دی‌راد بصن‌ار **Toolbar** هنوزفا هک دن‌راذگایم نی‌ا رب ارض‌رف‌نی‌ا ری‌ظن‌شی‌امی‌پ‌ی‌اهل‌معل‌اروتس‌دد ری‌س‌م‌ه‌ب دی‌اب **Manage** هن‌زگ‌ی‌ور‌کی‌ل‌ک زا‌س‌پ‌هحفص‌ی‌ال‌اب‌ی‌ونم‌راون‌رد هک تسا‌نی‌ا‌ی‌نعم‌ه‌ب هن‌ونم **Structure** س‌پ‌س **Taxonomy** زا تسا‌ترابع هحفص‌ی‌ناش‌نی‌ا‌رد و دی‌ورب <http://example.com/admin/structure/taxonomy> دش‌اب امش‌تی‌اس‌ه‌ی‌اپ‌ی‌ناش‌ن‌رگا.



دین‌ک‌ایم‌ه‌ده‌اش‌م‌ی‌رگ‌ی‌د هن‌ونم‌اج‌نی‌ا‌رد:

یتی‌ری‌دم‌ی‌ونم‌رد **Manage\_# #####\_Configuration** > System > Site information (admin/config/system/site-information) دی‌ورب.

و دین‌ک‌ادی‌پ‌ار **Manage** و **Configuration\_# #####\_System** یور‌کی‌ل‌ک زا‌س‌پ، هن‌ونم‌نی‌ا‌رد **Site information** ری‌س‌م‌رد اه‌تن‌ا‌رد. دین‌ک‌کی‌ل‌ک <http://example.com/admin/config/system/site-information> دی‌ری‌گ‌ایم‌راق.

**SYSTEM**

**Basic site settings**  
Change site name, email address, slogan, default front page, and error pages.

**Cron**  
Manage automatic site maintenance tasks.

رد "Add" ی‌اه‌هم‌ک‌د‌زا‌ی‌رای‌س‌ب، دین‌ک‌ایم‌ه‌دادن‌ات‌س‌ا‌بل‌اق‌زار‌گا‌زی‌گ‌ی‌د‌ه‌ت‌ک‌ن‌ک‌ی اوب‌ح‌م‌ن‌دو‌زفا‌ه‌م‌ک‌د **Seven** ی‌تی‌ری‌دم‌در‌ادن‌ات‌س‌ا‌بل‌اق‌زار‌گا‌زی‌گ‌ی‌د‌ه‌ت‌ک‌ن‌ک‌ی ای‌آی‌تی‌ری‌دم‌ط‌بار تقوی‌ق‌ح‌رد و تسا‌ا‌بل‌اق‌رب‌ی‌نت‌ب‌م‌لم‌ع‌نی‌ا‌ه‌چ‌ر‌گ‌ا. دب‌ای‌ای‌م‌ش‌ی‌ام‌ن + **Add new content** تروص‌ه‌ب‌دی‌دج

رد سپ. دوشیزه من هدن او خواه حفص کی طسوت امازلا، هن و من یارب [ ] تسوین هم کدی ور نتم زای تمسق دوشیزه من یاهراش ااهام کدی ور [ ] تماعل هب، امن هارنیا.

## اهم رف ن درگ رپ

رث کا رد. دین ک رپ ار مرک کی ن آ رد دی اب ه ک دنتسه ی مآگ لم اش امن هارنیا ی نی رمت تاعوضوم زای رای سب رارق ن آ ی اهدلی ف رد دی اب ه ک اهرا دقم زای لودج هارمه هب، دوشیزه هداد شی امن مرک زای وصت کی، دراوم ارتی اس تاعال طا ه ک، دوشیزه عورش ریز تروص هب ه ک دین بب اری لودج تسا نکمم، هن و من یارب. دی هد Configuration > System > Site information (admin/config/system/site-information) رد ن آ هب طوب رم مرک یارب دهدایم حیضوت.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Site name	Name of your site	Anytown Farmers Market

مان کی. دی هد رارق ن آ رد ار دوخ تی اس مان و هدرک ادی پ مرک رد ار Site name دلی ف، لودج نیا زا هدافتسا یارب هاگش و رف یارب تی اس ب و کی داجیا وی رانس هب ه ک "Anytown Farmers Market" # [ ] رتشیب تایی زج یارب [ ] تسا طبت رم امن هارنیا رد هدش هراش ای زرواش ک [ ] دین ک هدهاشم ار [ ].

ن اگدن کات کراش م

طسوت هدش شیاری و هتشون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## امن هار وی رانس i.6.

ور شی پ هژورپ وی رانس. تسا رثوم رای سب تی اس ب وی عقاو و هژورپ کی هدیا، امن هارنیا هعل اطم مآگن ه دوشیزه لمش اش ار طبت رم یاهدن وی پ و می هافم زای اهع و مجم:

لحه هرابرد تاعال طا شی امن دنمزاین تی اس. دیتسه ی زیاب کی رازاب کی هدی اس ب و دیل وت لاح رد امش یتسرهف دراد زاین نی نچمه. ن آ هچ خی رات هرابرد [ ] حفص کی هارمه هب تسا رازاب ی راکی اهاتع اس و دامن کی هلمج زا [ ] دن شاب دوخ مالقا شی اری و هب رذاق دی اب ناگدن شورف. دهد شی امن ار ناگدن شورف زا دن ن اوتب دی اب تی اس ناگدن کاهع جارم. دن ن ک ل اس را ار دوخ یاهال معل اروتسد دن ن اوتب و [ ] ری وصت ای ارتسا دوجوم رازاب رد ه ک مادک ره زاین دروم هیلوا داوم و هدرک شی امی پ فلت خم یاهال معل اروتسد نیب ویل ص ات احفص نی اربان ب، دن ن کایم تبحص ی رگی دن ابز هب امش تی اس ن ارب راک ی خرب. دن زاد هم جرت هب زاین ناگدن شورف.

ن اگدن کات کراش م

طسوت هدش شیاری و هتشون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

# ل اپورد کرد ۱. ل صفحه

## ۱.۱. اوت حم تی ری دم متسیس کی ناونع هب ل اپورد: موهفم

### ؟ت سیچ اوت حم تی ری دم متسیس

فذح و شیاری و، راشتن، ندوزفا هزاجا ناربرانک هب هک تتسای رازف المن اوت حم تی ری دم متسیس کی زیمور هنای ارای تلبت، دنم شوه یش وگ رد دوجوم ب و رگرورم زا دافتسا اب ارتی اس ب و کی اوت حم هکی اهنای اری ورن آی اهاتپی رکس ا و دوشایم هتشون یتپی رکس ا نابز کی هب CMS رازف المن، الومع، دهایم هداده اگی اپ رد الومع تی اس ب و تامی ظنت و اوت حم. ددرگلیم بصن، تتسا نآ رد زین رورس ب و هداده اگی اپ از زاین دروم تاعال طا تپی رکس ا، دوشایم رورس اب و هب هکی اهحفص تتس اوخرد رهی ازا هب و دنوشایم هری خذ ای دنتسه CMS زای وزج هک CSS، تپی رکس اواج، ریوصت یاهلی اف ##### و هداده اگی اپ زا دوش هتخاس رظن دروم هحفص ات دنکایم بی کرت دن اهدش دراو ن آ هب.

هدهش هتشون ن آ هب هکی سیون همان رب نابز، دوشایم ارجا ن آی ور CMS هکی لیلم اعمات سیس بی کرت، اب دنکایم شزادرب اری تفایردی اهاتس اوخرد هکی رورس اب و دنکایم هری خذ ار ن آ تاعال طا هکی اهاده اگی اپ هداده اگی اپ، یچ اپ آ رورس اب و، سکونیل لماعمات سیس بی کرت نی دتال وادتم؛ دوشایم هتخانش ##### مان MySQL هتخانش LAMP Stack مان اب PHP یسیون همان رب نابز و.

### ؟ت سیچ ل اپورد

ندوزفا ناکما هک رال وژام یحارت هارمه هب، تتسا LAMP هتشپ ماسا رب ری ذپافاطعن CMS کی ل اپورد فذح و بصن اب ارتی اس ب و رهاظ ری غت ناکما و ##### فذح و بصن اب ارتی ل باق فذح و یارب PHP یاهاتپی رکس ا لم اش، دوشایم هتخانش هتسه مان اب هک، ل اپورد هکی اپ دولناد دراد ##### یاهاتپی رکس اواج یاهلی اف ی رای اس ب و اهاب لاق و اهان و زفا خرب هارمه هب، تتسا CMS هیل وای اهاتی ل باق ی ارجا دولناد [Drupal.org](https://Drupal.org) تی اس ب و قری رط زا دن ن او تایم ی فاضا ای اهاب لاق و اهان و زفا زای رای اس ب. ریوصت و CSS و دن وش.

دوش هدافتسا زین ی رگی دی اه دتس ب رد دن او تایم نی نجمه ل اپورد

سکونیل ی احباب، دش اب ش اتنی کم ای زودنی و دن او تایم لماعمات سیس.

یچ اپ آی اجب دش اب IIS ای Nginx دن او تایم رورس اب و.

دن نام ن آرب ی نتبم یاهنی زگی اج ای MySQL ی اجب دش اب PostgreSQL SQLite ای دن او تایم هداده اگی اپ MariaDB ای Percona.

یاهاتپی رکس ا، هچ رگا؛ دن وش هدافتسا دن ن او تایم زین اهاده اگی اپ و اهورس اب و، اهال ماعمات سیس ری اس دن املکم ی قاب ری غت ل باق ری غ هک دن تسه PHP نابز هب دنکایم هدافتسا ن آ زا رازف المن هک.

## ؟تسیچ لابورد زا هدافتسا لیالد

باختن ا فلت خم ای ابزیم ای اهاتس ب نیب زا دی اوتایم، تی اس ب و کی ت خ اس م اگن ه دن اهادش رکذ لیلد دنج اجنیا. دی رتب شی پ ن زا هدافت سا ن ودب ارتی اس ای دی زاس ب ار دوخ CMS، دین ک دن شاب رثوم تسا ن کمم لابورد باخ بن ای ارب ه ک

- راکنی ا دین اوتایم ای ت حاره ب و ت سی ن ای راوش د راک HTML اتسی ا ت ا ح فص اب ک ج و ک تی اس کی ت خ اس.
- دن ام ای اهاتی زم ه ک دراد زاین ای دت شی ب هیل وا ن امز ه ب ایل و م ع م CMS اب تی اس کی ای ارب. دی ه د ماجن ا ار اهالی اف اب راک ای راوش د لی گچ راپ کی، لی رتم ک ای راک ه برجت اب ن اگ دن سی ون ای ارب نی ال ن آ شی اری و دوشایم لم اش ار ه داده اگی اب رتاه دی جی پ اهاتی لباق زا هدافت سا ن اکما و لی دت اگ رزب ای اهاتی اس رد اتسی ا ه ک دن راد دوچ و ای ابزیم تام دخ و اهاتس ب، ه ن و م ن ای ارب؛ دن ت س ه ه روظن م صاخ CMS ای اه رازف المرن ای خ رب.
- فرط زا، لابورد. دی زاس ب ار تی و ضع هاگ شاب تی اس ب و ای گال ب و کی دین اوتی م هن آ زا هدافت سا اب زا دی ه او خ ب دی اش دی راد ار ه روظن م صاخ تی اس کی ت خ اس دصق رگا. ت س ا ه روظن م هم CMS کی، رگی د دش اب ه روظن م صاخ طی ارش زا ج را خ امش تی اس رگا، بل اح نی ا اب؛ دین ک هدافت سا ه روظن م صاخ CMS کی دن ک هدافت سا ه روظن م هم CMS کی زا ه ک ت س ا ه رز ه ب دن ام ه روظن م هم CMS کی زا هدافت سا، هچ رگا. دی آی م ب اس ح ه بی ب ل اج راک دوخ CMS رازف المرن ت خ اس.
- یاهاب اس ح دن ام CMS کی رده ای اب ای اهاتی لباق ه ک ارج، ت س ای ب و خ باختن ا زاغه طق ن اون ع ه ب لابور د ن ای ل اس هارمه ه ب، درا دل ابند ه ب ار ن اگ دن ه ده ع سوت ش ال ت زا ت ع اس ن ارا زه اوت حم تی ری دم و دی رتب راک دن اهادش تی و قت ن آتی ن ما و فرط روب ن آی اهابی ع، دی س ر رب اهاتی لباق نی ا ه کی زار د.
- ای دن ت س ه ن اگی ار ه ک م ه ای خ رب. دن راد هارمه ه بی ت می قلن ارگ زوج م ای رازف المرن ای اهاتس ب ای خ رب.
- دنه ک دودخم ای ه زوج م ه ب انب ار ه ع سوت و دی غت ه زاج ا امش ه ب دن و شایم لم اش ار ن اگی اری اه خسن ای رازف المرن زوج م ه ک دین ک هدافت سا لابور دن ام ای اهاتس ب زا دی ه او خ ب دی اش. دن دلی م ن دوخ رد رت شی ب تاعال طا ای ارب. دب ای ه ع سوت ی گ رزب دی رتب را کاه ع ماج ط سوت و دش اب ه دش اد نی اه دن ک دودخم دی ن ک ه ده اش م ار #### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####" ه طبار نی ا.

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- #### 1.2, "#####: ##### #####"
- #### 1.3, "#####: ##### #####"
- #### 1.4, "#####: ##### #####"
- #### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"

## یتاعل اطم ع با نم

- ##### # # #####
- Drupal.org ##### "FAQ" (##### ##### #####)
- Drupal.org ##### "##### ##### #####"

- ##### ##### "##### ##### #####"
  - ##### ##### "##### ##### #####"

ن اگ دن ن کات ک راش م

رد Kristof van Tomme Pronovix Michael Lenahan erdfisch و Jennifer Hodgdon.

## ۱.۲. موهفه و زفہ اہن

ڈائیکشنری پ شن اد

##### 1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### # # ##### # # ##### # # #####"

؟تسيچ هنوزفا

رتشیب یاهتیل باق ندوزفا اب هک تسا `CSS` و `JavaScript# PHP` یاهالیاف زا یاهعومجم هنوزفا کی، ار ن آ## اب و لاعف ار اهاتیل باق نیا دیوناوتمیم هنوزفا#### اب .دش خبلایم دوبه ب ار تی اس درکلمع کاپ ار هنوزفا طسوت هدش لامعا یاهی دن برکی پ و هداد دش اب زاین دی اش، فذح زا لباق؛ دی ن ک لاعفریغ تسا رت هب س پ، درازگایم ریثات امش تی اس ی لک درکلمع رب دوشایم بصن هک یاهنوزفا ره .دی ن ک دی ن ک فذح ار هدافتسا لاب یاهنوزفا.

دن کایم مهارف ار ریزی اهراک ی ارب زاین دروم ی اهان وزفا ل اپورد ھتسه

- ی اهانوزفا نین جم ۵ هنوزفا [User] ی در بر اکی اهاب اسح تری ری دم
  - ی اهانوزفا [Field UI]# ۹ هنوزفا [Node] ی اهانوزفا [Field] اهدلی ف و دراد دوج و زین اهدلی ف عون ی ارب
  - ی اهانوزفا [Menu UI] ۱۰ هنوزفا [Views UI] ی اهانوزفا [Views] دوج و می اهداد زا اهکال ب و اهکب ش، اهات سرهف داجی ا

ای هدرک دولناد ##### زا ار ##### دریون اوتایم نیونچم ##### [Drupal.org](#) دیزاس ب ار دوخ #####.

طہریم تاعوضوم

- ##### 1.3. “#####; #####”

- [#### 1.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 4.4, "Uninstalling Unused Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)
- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

## یتاعل اطم عبانم

[##### Drupal.org](#)

ناگدننکاتکراشم

طسوت دش هتشون [Jennifer Hodgdon.](#)

## اهبلاق : موهفم . 1.3

### زادن شیپ شناد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### # # ##### ##### # #####"](#)

### ؟تسیچ بلاق

و لابورد هتسه . دنکایم نییعت ار امش تیاس رهاظ و هولج هک تسا اهلیاف زایاهعومجم بلاق کی هریخ ذیاهداد رسیاس و HTML نتم هلمج زا [ ] مادک دنکایم نییعت امش تیاس رد لاعفیاهنوزفا شیامن امش تیاس تاحفصیور [ ] رگیدیاهلیافی رایس ب و هدشی راذگرایب ریواصت، هدادهآگیاپ رد هدش دوش هدافتسا اوتحم رهاظیارب CSS شیامن ھویش و گت مادک زا دنکایم صخشم بلاق . دوش هداد HTML

طسوت ارثکا هک اهلبلاق نیا .تسا یلصا عیزوت هارمه هب هیاپ بلاق دنج لماش لابورد هتسه رهاظیور رب راک عورشی اربیس انم باختن ادن اهدشی زاسهادایپ ویحارت زاردن ایل اسی طی دربراکاهعماج دیوش انش آهنی مذنیا رد لابورد میهافم اب دین اوتب ات دنتسه تیاس

ھدرتسگ رایس ب \_ یلوب پھج ناگیار هج \_ زین نآی اهلبلاق رازاب سپ تسا هدش هتخانش CMS کی لابورد تسا

طہریم تاعوضوم

- #### 11.4, "Finding Themes"
  - #### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"
  - #### 1.2, "#####: #####"

یتاعل اطم عب انم

ن اگ دن ن کات ک را شم

طس و ہدش شیاری و ہت شون [John Grubb](#) و [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## ۱.۴. اهاعیزوت: موهفم

زائیں شی پ شن اد

- #### 1.1, “#####: #####”
  - #### 1.2, “#####: #####”
  - #### 1.3, “#####: #####”

؟تسىچ عىزوت

یاهتسب تروص هب تیاس کی زا یصاخ عون یارب هدامآ شیپ زا یاهیان اوت و اهتیلباق ##### کی. دنتسه مادک ره صاخ یدن برکیپ و رگید یاهابلاق و اههن وزفا هارمه هب یلصا رازفالمرن زالکشتم مامات ادتبا زا هکنیا ات دنکایم ینایاش کمک رتمک یاهماگ رد هروظنم صاخ یتیاس یاپرب هب عیزوت دوشی طنآل حارم.

دنهاد دوجو اهاعي زوت زايل صاعون ود

## لامک و مامتی اهاعیزوت

ی راجت، ی هاگشن اد طی حم دن نام دی آیم با سح هب صاخ لی کشم لح ی ارب هدام آی اله زورب ی عی ذوق نین ج عی ذوق کی زا دی ن او تایم امش، هن و من ی ارب. لی بق نی ازا و یع امت جا، ی هن اسر، یع افت ناریع، ی تل و د عی ذوق کی ن او نع هب ار دوخ یاهن لح هار ای دی ن ک هدافتسا ی زرواشک هاگش ورف ت خا س ای ارب دوج و م دی را ذگب ن ارگی د رای ت خا رد.

اھعی زوت ری اس

رامش هب ناگدنده عسوت ای نازاساتی اس ای اربی زاغا ه طقون ناونع هب دنن اوتلیم نی نچمه اهاعیزوت دنی آی

طہریم تاعوض و م

#### **#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"**

یت اعل اطم عب انم

[##### ###### ##### ##### ## Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org)

ن اگ دن ن کات ک را شم

و [Diána Lakatos](#) و [Antje Lorch](#) "##### زا ##### و ##### # ##### # ##### — ##### # #####".

## ۱.۵. موهفه اونا داد

## ؟دنتسه مادک یا هداد عاونا

شی اری و هن اگادجی اه اوی ش هب کی ره هک، دن و شایم می سقت فلت خم عون راهچ هب امشتی اس تاعال طا و هداد،  
با: زا دن ترابع عون راهچ نیا. دن درگایم ی زاسا هری خذ و هم جرت

عون نیا . دنوش هداد شیامن تیاس ب طاخم هب دیاب هک  $\square$  لیبق نیا زا و ریوصت ، نتم  $\square$  تاعمالطا  
دنوش شیاری و دنزن اوتفیم اما دنتسه رادی ایب الوم عم تاعمالطا

هدافت ساتی اس راتخ اس نییعتی ارب و تسس ارادی اب اما، دشابن اوتحم هک امشتی اس هرابردتاعال طا  
ینتمی اهاتمسق الومع اما، دوش هداد شیامن بطاخم هبتسا نکمم زین اهاتقوی ضعیم دوشایم  
یاهاتمسق فالخ رب للی بق نیا زا و تی اس مان، اهدلی ف بسچرب دنن ام دوشایم لماش اری کچوک  
دی ساریشیم اوتحم ناونع هب هک روتاگزرب.

ارجا cron ىاهاتىل اعف هك ىنام زىرخ آدىن نام، امش تى اس ىل عف تلالح تقوم تى عى ب ط هرابرد تاعال طا دى: الدىش

تسشن

نیا بیکوک تاعالطا ای تسیاس هب اهنا دورو دننام، تسیاس اب ناربراکی دارفنا لمامعت هرابرد تاعالطا تسایتقوم هک ارج، تساصوچخ هب تلاح کی.

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)
- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)
- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

ن اگدن کات کراشم

با Jennifer Hodgdon طسوت هدش سابتقا ["##### ## ##### ##### ## ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)

## ل اپورد هژورپ: موهفم 1.6.

زاینشی پ شناد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)

؟تسیچ سروس نپوا و دازا رازفامرن

ریغ زوجم کی تحت دازفا زایاهعماج طسوت هک تسای رازفامرن (FOSS) سروس نپوا و دازا رازفامرن ددرگایم داجیا دازآ تروص هب دنزاصلیم ار همانرب هکی اهله اف دازآ راشتن اب و ریراجت ریغ زوجم هدافتسای راجت، ل اپورد رد هدش هرابرد رتشیب تاعالطا ای ارب دینک هدهاشم ار [#### 1.7, "#####: ##### ##### #####"](#).

؟تسیچ ل اپورد هژورپ

یاهعومجم هارمه هب اوتحم تسیری دم متتسیس هتسیس هعسوت نآ فده هک تسای هژورپ کی ل اپورد هژورپ رد اردوخ هی امرس و نامز هکی دارفا. تسای دروظنم صاخی اهاعیزوت و تادنتسیم، آهه همچجرت، اهبلاق، اهانوزفا زایوبیل و هدرتسسگی اهعماج اتقیق هک دنیآیم مه درگ ایند فلتخم طاقن زا دن ھلیم رارق ل اپورد هژورپ دننکلیم راک کرتشم یارب هک دنتسه.

دننام دن‌هیلیم ماجنا اری صاخ هفیظو مادک ره هک تسا هدش لیکشتیکچوکی ااههورگ زا ی رب را کاهع ماج لابورد رازف‌امرن تینما تی عضوی سررب، تادنتسن نتیشون، لابورد رب ی نتبم ی رازف‌امرن هعسوت هقطنم کی رد هک ی اهای ام‌هدرگ و هژی و ی اه درب را کی ارب لابورد زا هدافتسا، صاخ ی نابز هب نآ هم جرت دن‌هیلیم ماجنا هن‌ایل اس تروص هب ی ای فارغ.

ی رب را کاهع ماج اب طابترا ی رارق رب هرابرد رتشیب تاعال طا ی ارب [##### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) و [##### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#) دی‌نک هده‌اشم ار.

## ؟تسیچ لابورد نمجنا

نآ ی رب را کاهع ماج و لابورد هژورپ زا ی نابی‌تشپ روظنم هب ی عافتنان ریغ نام‌زاں کی [##### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) دن‌ترابع نآ لیل‌صا فادها تسا:

- ی‌ن‌اچ ی‌اه‌دارا رق دافعنان
- ی‌اه‌رس و اه‌تی‌اس‌بو زا ی‌راده‌گن [Drupal.org](#)
- ب و مرفتلپ ن‌اوونع هب لابورد اقترا
- لابورد ی‌اه‌لش‌زومآ و تالی‌صحت زا ی‌ن‌ابی‌تشپ
- نآ فادها درب‌شیپ ی‌ارب ی‌رب را کاهع ماج هب ی‌ل‌ام ی‌اه‌کمک ن‌درک مهارف
- فادها نی‌ا روظنم هب ی‌دقن ی‌اه‌کمک ی‌روآ عمج

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [##### 1.7, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [##### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [##### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)
- [##### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

## ی‌تاعل‌اطم‌عبانم

- [##### ##### ##### #####](#)
- [## ## #####](#)

ن‌اگ‌دن‌کات‌کراش‌م

طسوت هدش هت‌شون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 1.7. ل اپورڈ زوجم : موهفم

ڈائیکٹیوں کا شناد

```
##### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### ## ##### ## #####"
```

## ؟تسیچ ل آپ ورد زو حم

دین کی ریگی پر دعا و اوق نیا دی اب ل اپ ورد ناگدن نکات کراش م

- اهالی اف هلمج زا، دن شاب دعب هب **GPL v2** زوجم تحت دی اب **Drupal.org** اهله زورپ رد دوجومی اهالی اف مامت لی بق نیا زا و شلف، ریوصت، تپری رکس اواچ PHP#.
  - هباشم زوجم تحت ارن آدی اب، دن ک تی ارلی پک ارد دوخ دک دن هاوخفیم هک لایپورد ناگدن کاتکراش م مامت دن هد رارق لایپورد اب.
  - تحت دی اب، دی راد ار اهلن آعیزوت دصق رگا. دن وشایم قتشم لیل صا هژورپ زا لایپوردی اهبل اق و اهان وزفا دن ک لمع دعب هب **GPL v2** زوجم.
  - زوجم تحت و دوشایم تی ارلی پک دوخ ناگدن کاتکراش م مان هب **Drupal.org** رد دوجومی اوتحم مامت تسا 2.0.
  - Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike license
  - دنتسا ه دعب هب **GPL v2** زوجم تحت زین **Drupal.org** رد هن و منی اهدک.

طبِ ترمیم و عوض و م

#### **#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"**

یتاعل اطم عب‌انم

- ##### "##### ##Drupal.org
  - ##### "Drupal 8 LICENSE.txt" ## api.drupal.org
  - ##### ##### ##### ###### #### #
  - ##### ##### ##### ###### #### #

- [\*Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike license 2.0.\*](#)
- ["##### ##### ## groups.drupal.org](#)

ن اگدنن کات کراش م

ا ب ت ق ا ط س و ت ه د ش س ا ب ت ق ا [\*Diána Lakatos\*](#) [\*Pronovix\*](#) ["##### ##"](#).

# تیاسیح ارط. 2. لصف

## بلاق کی رد اهیحان : موهفم . 2.1.

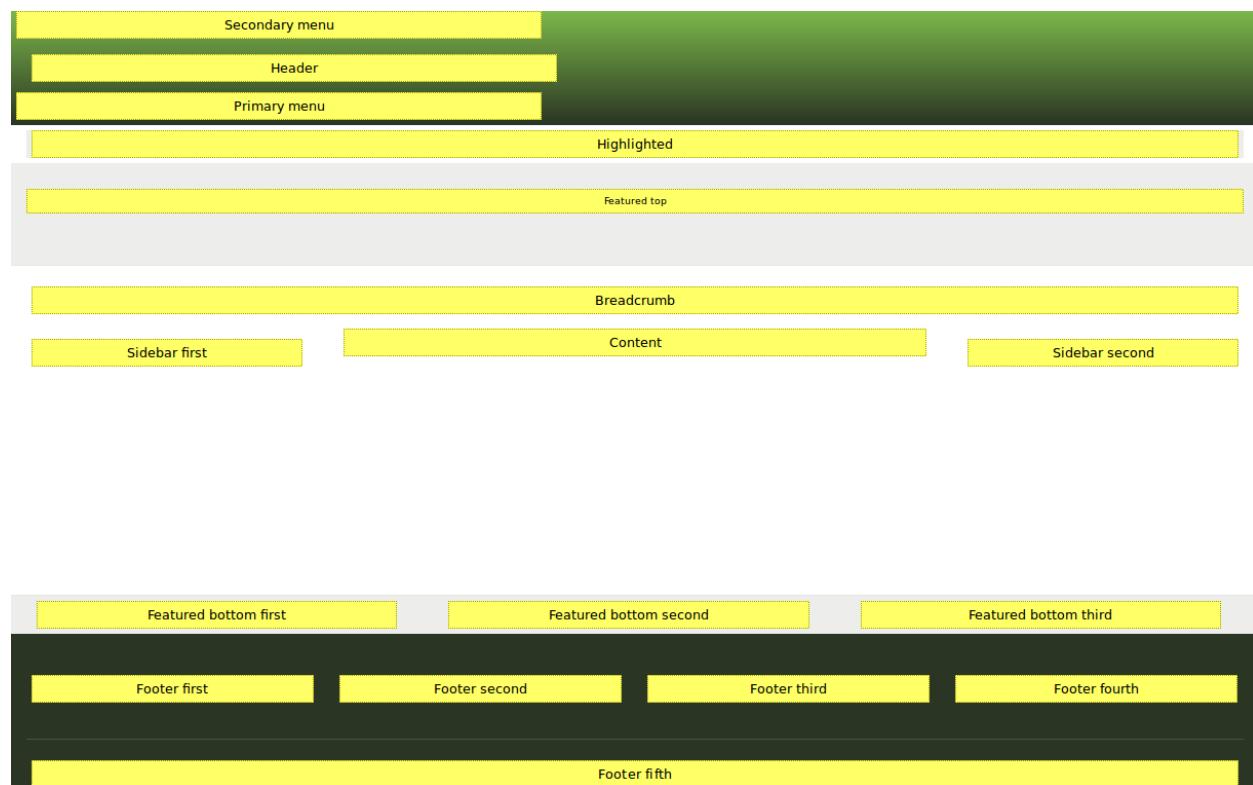
### زاینشیپ شناد

[#### 1.3, #####: #####](#)

### ؟تسیچ هیحان کی

تیاسیمان  تیاسیبو ویراجت مان دننامی دگیدی اوتحم لماش بو و حفص کی، لصا اوتحم رب هوالع بلاق ره. تسا ریواست و هدشیدن بابل اق نتم،  اهان وکی او ودنوی پ، اهون  شیامی پ رازبا،  دامن و راعش ن ازاساتی اس هک Content # \_Header و Sidebar دننام دنکلیم مهارف اردشی راذگمانی اهیحان زایاهیومجم دن هدارق ن آرد اردوخی اوتحم دنن اوتحم.

تیاسیبو لصلای اوتحم لماش هک، اوتحم هیحان اهن ت. دنراد بلاقی حارت هبی گتس سب دوجومی اهیحان لماش دراد دوجول اپوردهتسه رد هک Bartik بلاق. دنتسه رایتخا اهیحان ری اس؛ دشابیم زاین دروم، تسا دینکلیم هدهاشم ریز ریوصت رد هک تسا هیحان ۱۸



## طبترم تابعوضوم

- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#)

## یتاعل اطم عبانم

- ["##### ##### ## ##### ##### ## ##### ##### ##### ##### Drupal.org"](#)

ناگدننکاتکراشم

طسوت هدش اشیاری و و هتشون [John MacDonald](#) و [Michael Lenahan erdfisch](#).

## تیاسی حرطی زی راهمانرب 2.2.

### فده

لیابوم و یزیموری اهانای اری اهرگرورمی ارب، تیاس کی حرط و شیامی پی زی راهمانرب.

### زاينشی پ شناد

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ##### ## ## #####"](#)
- [#### i.6, "##### ##### #####"](#)

### اهم اگ

حرط، هچرگا؛ دیزادرپب نآ حرطی زی راهمانرب هب، اوتحم دیلوت و تیاس تخاص زا لبقد کتسا یبوخ هدیا  
یاوتحم دنج هکنیا زا سپ ای دش اب هتشاد ددجم ینی بذاب هب زاین ندش یارج زا لبقد کتسا نکمم امش  
دراد یگتسسب هژورپ رد عفنی ذدارفا شنکاو و هج دوب هب رما نیا. دیهد رارق تیاس لخاد هنونم.

هاگشورف وی رانس رد. دینک هیهت ار دوش هداد ناشن بطا خم هب دیاب هک تاعل طا زا یتسرهف 1.  
دوش لماش ار ریز دراوم دن او تایم تسرهف نیا، یزرواشک

هچ خیزات \* تسا زاب هاگش ورف هک یاهلت عاس و اهزور \* هشقون و ین اشن هارمه هب هاگش ورف لحم \*  
زا وجت سج لباق تسرهف \* هدن شورف ره اب طبترم تایئزج \* ناگدن شورف تسرهف \* هاگش ورف  
+ هاگش ورف هب هدش هفاضا تال و صحم نیرخ آتسرهف \* ل و صحم ره تایئزج \* تال و صحم

1. دن ری گب رارق دی اب تی اس ی اهات مسق مادک ردی تاعال طا هج دی ری گب می مصت.

دن شاب تاحفص مامت ردی اب هک ی تاعال طا  
هدش هفاضا تال و صحم نیرخ آوی راک تعاس، ین اشن

هدن شورف تایئزج تاحفص  
ش دوخ هحفص رد هدن شورف ره هب طوبرم تاعال طا

ل و صحم تایئزج تاحفص  
ش دوخ هحفص رد ل و صحم ره هب طوبرم تاعال طا

یل صاصا هحفص  
ی راک تعاس و ین اشن، هشقون، ناکم

هرابرد هحفص  
ه اگش ورف هچ خی رات

ن اگدن شورف تسرهف هحفص  
مادک ره هحفص هب دنوی پ هارمه هب، ن اگدن شورف زای تسرهف

تال و صحم تسرهف هحفص  
مادک ره هحفص هب دنوی پ هارمه هب، تال و صحم زا وجت سج لباق تسرهف

2. تی اس نی ب طاخم. تسا رادر و خرب ی رت شی ب تی مها زا تاعال طا مادک هحفص رد هک دی ری گب می مصت  
شی امن ی اوتحم نی لوا هب بلغا دن کایم هدافتسا کچ وک ی اهرگرورم ری اس ای لی ابوم ی اهای شوگ زا هک  
دن زادرپلی من ن آهم ادا ی سرب هب ال و معم و دن راد هجوت هحفص رد هتفای

3. یارب. دن ری گب رارق تی اس یل صاصا شی امی پ راون رد دی اب تاحفص نیا زا کی مادک دی ری گب می مصت  
دش اب تال و صحم و ن اگدن شورف، هرابرد، یل صاصا هحفص لم اش تسا ن کمم شی امی پ راون، هن و من

4. گرزب و کچ وک ی اهرگرورم رد ار ن آشی امن هوحن هک، دی ری گب رظن رد هی لوا حرط کی هحفص ره یارب  
ی اهرگرورم زا تی اس ن اگدن کدی دزاب رثکا هکنی اب هجوت اب. ددلیم ن اشن شی امن توافت هارمه هب  
ناوت ب ات دی ن کی حارط کچ وک ی اهه زادنا اب ادت با هک تسا ی بوخ هدی ا، دن کایم هدافتسا رت اکچ وک  
زاین هکن آن ودب تشد دن هاوخ ی سرتسد دوخ زاین دروم ی اوتحم هب دارفا رثکا درک لصاح نانی مطا  
دش اب هحفص ی دومع شی امی پ هب

ماجن ار کچ وک تاحال صاصا هچ رب دی راد زاین هک دی ب اید رسان کمم، تاحفص نیا هرات خ اس حرط داجیا رد  
ی راک تعاس، ین اشن رسان رت هب رت اگ رزب ی اهرگرورم یارب دی ری گب می مصت رسان کمم، هن و من یارب. دی هد  
دی ری گب می مصت دی اش، رگی دفترط زا. دنوش هداد شی امن هحفص ری رانک راون رساتال و صحم نیرخ آتسرهف و  
دی هد شی امن هحفص ره یال اب رسی رت رصتخم بلاق رسی راک تعاس و ین اشن، رت اکچ وک ی اهرگرورم یارب  
دبای شی امن هحفص رسی اهتن رساتال و صحم نیرخ آتسرهف اما.

## دی هد شی ازفا ار دوخ کرد

#### 2.5, ##### #### # ##### ####

ن اگدن کات کراشم

طسوت هدش هتشون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## ۲.۳. موهفم: اهاتی دوجوم و اهدلیف

### زاین شیپ شناد

- #### 1.5, #####: ##### #####
- #### 1.2, #####: ##### #####

### تسیچ تی اوتجم تی دوجوم

دک، نتم زا دن اوتلایم هک تسا ای اوتجم هداد زا ای اهنیزگ (کی ای [ ]) کی ای [ ] کی دوش هداد شی امن تی اس ناگدن کدی دزاب هب دی اب هک کی اهه داد ری اس و همی مرضی اهالی اف، ری وصت HTML# دی لوت رگی دی اهان وزفا ای دوجوم رازف امرن زا هدافتسا اب دن اوتلایم تی اوتجم اهاتی دوجوم. ددرگ لی گشتن دن وش.

فادها کی ره هک، دن وشیم ی دن بامی سقت # مان اب ای اهه ورگ رد ای اوتجم اهاتی دوجوم هب دوخ تی دوجوم عاونا رثکا. دن با ایم شی امن تی اس ردی فلت خم اهه ویش هب و هتشادی فلت خم ی گن و گچ و دن تسه تی دوجوم ره لخاد کچ و کی اهش خب هک دن وشیم می سقت # # # # # # # # دراد دوجول وادتم ی اوتجم تی دوجوم عاونا ای خرب زا لودج اجنیا رد. دن کلیم لرتنک ارن آزا هدافتسا

یل صای اهدربراک	تی دوجوم عون	ن اهن و زفا	تی دوجوم هخاش [ ]	تی دوجوم عون
رد دی اب هک ای اوتجم حفصیل صایتم سق دوش هداد شی امن	Node	اوتحم عون	اوتحم هنیزگ	ی اوتحم عون
حفص اوتحم عاونا دی هاوخب دی اش، ی زرواش ک هاگش ورفل اثمه رد: هن و من دی شاب هتشاد ارتال و صحم هحفص و ناگدن شورف هحفص، هداس	Comment	هآگدید عون	هآگدید دی دج رد تیل باق	ی اوتحم هنیزگ
رد دن شاب هتشاد هاگدید شخب دن اوتلایم اهه تشون، گالب و کی رد: هن و من تی اس ن آب ی زاین ی زرواش ک هاگش ورفل اثمه	User	ی جی ه	ی ارادی درف اب بترم هداد در او [ ] ی ربراك با سح تی اس یور [ ] هدش	ی اوتحم هنیزگ
ی ارب. تسا لی می این اشن و ی ربراك مان لماش لقادح تی اس رد: هن و من دش اب رته دی چی پ رای سب دن اوتلایم تم سق نیا عامت جا ای اهه ک بش	Custom Block	کالب عون	تر وص هب ری وصت و هداد رد بلغ اهک هصالخ یی الاب ی اهاتم سق ره یی اهتننا و ی نایم داد شی امن هحفص دوشیم	ی شرافس کالب

تی دوجوم عون	ن آ هن وزفا	تی دوجوم دخاش ریز	یل صای اه در براک
ن اکم و ی راک ت ع اس دی ها خب دی اش، ی زرواش ک هاگش ورف ل اث م رد : هن و من دی هد رارق ی اه ن اگ اد ج تم سق رد ار هاگش ورف			
ی دن باهات س د ت رابع	ن اگز او	Taxonomy	او تح م ی دن باه ق ب ط ی ارب دو شایم ہ دافت سا
اب ار تال و ص حم دی ها خب دی اش، ی زرواش ک هاگش ورف ل اث م رد : هن و من و جی وہ دن ن ام دی ن ک ی دن باهات س د اه ن آ دن هد لی کش ت داوم زا ہ دافت سا گت ن اگز او زا ہ دافت سا اب دن او تایم ہ ت شون ره، گال بول اث م رد بی گن رفاه ج و گ دری گ رارق ن و گان و گی اه ی دن باهات س د ر د			
لی اف	ی جی ه	File	لی اف ای ری و صت کی کی هب هک ہمی م ض او تح م زا ص خ شم عون ت س ا ط ب ت رم
س امت م رف	م رف عون	Contact	قی رط زا ہک ی م رف ن اگدن ک دی د زاب ن آ ن اری دم اب دن ن او تایم رار ق رب طاب ترا تی اس دن ن ک
ت سا زاین س امت م رف هب، ی زرواش ک هاگش ورف ل اث م رد : هن و من			

## ؟ت سی ج دلی ف

ن آ زا ی ص خ شم عون ل ماش کی ره هک دو شایم هری خذی دار فن ر د داد، تی دوجوم ی اه نی زگ نور د  
دن ن او تایم اه دلی ف ع اون ا. اه خی رات ای اه لی اف ری اس ای ری و اصت، ہ دشی دن ب ابل اق ای ہ دا س ن ت م دن ن ام دن ت سه  
د ن و ش دی ل و ت رگی دی اه ن وزفا ای دوجوم راز ف ال مرن زا ہ دافت سا اب

ی اه نی زگ م ام ت هک ی ت رو ص هب، دن و ش ه ف اض اتی دوجوم ی اه ه خاش ری زی و ری دم ط س و ت دن ن او تایم اه دلی ف  
ی او تح م عون، هن و من ی ارب. دن شاب اه دلی ف زای ہ با شم ہ ع و م جم ل ماش ن ا دخاش ری زکی زا تی دوجوم  
Vend or ت حی صوت و تی اس ب و ی ن اش ن، ری و صت، مان ی ارب ی اه دلی ف ت سا ن کم م ی زرواش ک هاگش ورف ل اث م رد

ی اه دلی ف اه نت ت سا ن کم م ی او تح م عون هک ی ت رو ص ر د دو ش ل ماش ار دن ش ورف هب طوب رم  
دی زا در پا یم تی دوجوم ی اه نی زگ شی اری و ای داجی ا هب هک ی ن ام ز دش اب ہ ت ش ا د ار ہ ح ف ص حی ض و ت و ن اون ع  
دی ن ک ص خ شم دی ن او تایم ار ن آ هب طوب رم دلی ف ره زاین دروم ری داق م

## طب ت رم ت اع و ض و م

- #### 2.5, “##### #### # ##### #####”
- #### 5.2, “Creating a Content Item”
- #### 6.1, “Adding a Content Type”

- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)
- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

ن اگدن کات کراشم

by طسوت هدش شیاری و هتشون [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و [Grant Dunham](#).

## رالوژامی اوتحم: موهفم 2.4.

### زاینشی پشناد

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### ######"](#)
- [#### 2.2, "##### ##### #### # ####"](#)

### ؟تسیچ رالوژامی اوتحم

اوتحم نیا ندرک #####، دوشیم هریخذ هداده اگیاپ کی رد امش تیاسی اوتحم هکنیا هب هجوت اب لم اک هحفص کی ناونع هب هکنیا یاجب، امش تیاس تاحفص یخرب ینعی، دوب دهaxon یبولطم راک هاگش ورف وی رانس رد، هنومن یارب. دن درگ دیل ووت تیاسی اوتحم ری اس زا راکدوخ تروص هب، دن وش شیاری و لوصح رگا. دی ریگب رظن ردی اهن اگادج یی اوتحم هنیزگ لوصح ره یارب دی هاوخ بتسان کمم، یزرواش ک وجتسج تیل باق و هیلوا داوم نیا بیکرت اب دن اوتحم تیاس هاگن آ دش اب هیلوا داوم دلیف کی لم اش هب دوختی زاین دروم هیلوا داوم ی خرب ساسا رب دن اوتب ات دزاس مهارفی و یارب ارن اکم انیا، بطا خام هب نداد دزادربب نآلماش تالوصح میوجتسج.

تالوصح، هنومن یارب. دن وش هتخاس تابیکرت نیا زا دن اوتحم زین تاحفص رتکچوک یاهاتمسق ( دن شاب نآ هدن شورف مان ی زاس هریخذ یارب دلیف لم اش دن اوتحم [Fields](#) [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference](#) ماجنا ن اکم امش هب راکنیا. دراد رارق ی رگید هحفص رد هدن شورف تایئزج هک [ ] دن ک هدهاشم ار دهدایم ار ریزی اهاتیل اعف

هرامش و مان دن نام، دش اب نآ هدن شورف هب طوبرم تاعمال طای ارب یاهی حان دن اوتحم، لوصح ره هحفص رد ن آی راجت.

دش اب دوجوم ن آ تالوصح متس رهف ی ارب یتمسق دن اوتحم، هدن شورف ره هحفص رد.

هدن شورف تاعمال طا هک ی ن امز. دوش شیاری و هطقن کی رد اهن تاعمال طا زا هعطق ره هک تیاسانی ایل صا هدیا کی هک ی ن امز؛ دن وشیم زورب راکدوخ تروص هب زین ن آ اب طبترم تالوصح مامت، دوش ی ن اس رزورب

هنوزفا. دریگب رارق ن آ هدنش ورف ھحفص رد راکدوخ تر وص هب، دوش هدوزفا هدنش ورف طسوت لوصحم و تاحفص داجی ارب رال و زامی اوتحم زا هدافتسا درادن اتسا هویش، دراد رارق ل اپورد هتسه رد ھک Views

دین ک ھداشم ار "#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views" رتھی ب تعالا طا ی ارب ہتسا نوگانوگ ی اھکالب

تاعالطا ارب بدنتسه يبسانم رازبا #####، اوتحم عون ره فلتخم شیامن ارب، نینچمه

دین ک هدهاشم ار [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) رتшиپ

طبِ ترمیم و عوضی

- ##### 2.5, “##### ##### ##### #####”
  - ##### 6.1, “Adding a Content Type”
  - ##### 6.3, “Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type”
  - ##### 6.4, “Concept: Reference Fields”
  - ##### 6.10, “Concept: View Modes and Formatters”
  - ##### 9.1, “Concept: Uses of Views”

ن اگ دن ن کات ک راش م

Jennifer Hodgdon طسوت هتشون

## ۲.۵. رات خاص ی زیراهمان دب

فده

هدافت سا تى دوجوم ھحاش رىز و عون ھج زا اوتحم ره ى ارب تى اس ى اوتحم راتخاس ى ارب ى حرط داجىا دن شاب تى اس ى اوتحم زا يتس رسهف لماس تاحفص مادك هكنىا و دوش

ڈائیکٹریٹ

- #### 2.3, “#####: ##### # ##### ##### #####”
  - #### 2.4, “#####: ##### ##### #####”
  - #### i.6, “##### #####”

۱۵۰

1. رظن دروم یاوت حم لم اش دن اوت لیم هک دراد زاین یاوت حم هچ هب امش تی اس هک نیا هراب رد ی رک فمه حی ضوت دن اوت لیم هجی تن دش اب نان آه ب شی امن یارب امش رظن دروم یاوت حم ای ناگدن کدی دزاب دش اب [#### i.6, ##### #####](#) رد طوب رم.
  2. رتاب سانم نآی ارب یاوت حم تی دوج و م عون مادک دی ری گب می مصت، دش یا اس ان ش یاوت حم ره ی ارب شی اری و دور لیم را کب تی اس رد اوت حم نیا هن و گچ و اچ ک دی ری گب رظن رد دی اب، را کنیا ی ارب. بت سا هاگ گش ورف ناکم و ی را ک ت ع اس دی هاوخ ب دی اش، ی زرواش ک هاگ گش ورف وی دان س رد، هن و م ن ی ارب. دوشیم ماجن ا امش را ک ی شرافس ک الاب کی، اوت حم نیا ی ارب. دی هد شی امن هحفص ره ی ران کراون رد ار شی امن ار هدن ش ورف ره تای یز ج هک ی تاحفص دی ری گب می مصت دی اش، رگی دی لاثم ن او ن ع هب. دهدلیم دن ن ک شی اری و ار دوخ تاعال طا دن ن اوت ب ناگدن ش ورف ات دن درگ تی ری دم [Node](#) هن وزفا طس و دن هدلیم دهدلیم ارین اکما نی نج امش هب [Node](#) هن وزفا ی هد زوج متسی س.

لیافورپ زا دین اوتفایم، هنونمن یارب بدرادن دوج و تبات خس اپ کی الومع تامی مصت هن و گنی ای ارب کی هب اوتحم تروص نی ارد اما، دین که هدافتسا هدن شورف هحفص یارب یی اوتحم هنی زگ یاجب یرب راک دوب ده اوخن یان اس آرک ناربرارک ری اس هب هدنی آرد نآ صاصتخا و دری گلیم قلعت ص اخ رب راک

- ن آی ارب ی ااهاخاش ریز هج دی ری گب می مصت، دین کلیم فی رعت هک ی اوت حم تی دوجوم عون ره نورد هنی زگ تی دوجوم عون رد دی هاوخ بت سان کمم ی زرواشک هاگش ورف لاثم رد، هن و من ی ارب. بت سا بسانم تاحفص ی ارب اوت حم عون کی، هر ارب رد و لوا هحفص هداس تاحفص ی ارب اوت حم عون کی، ی اوت حم دی ری گب رظن رد تال و صحم تاحفص ی ارب اوت حم عون کی و ن اگدن شورف.
  - ن و من ی ارب. دین ک فی رعت از زاین دروم ی اهدلی ف، دین کلیم صخشم هک تی دوجوم هخاش ریز ره ی ارب، هن آ تاحضوت و ریوصت، تی اس ب و ن اشن، هدن شورف مان ی ارب بت سان کمم ی اوت حم عون ده اوخ بی اهن اگ ادج ی اهدلی ف.
  - ی کچوک شخبا ای لم اش دن ن او تایم هک، دین ک صخشم از زاین دروم تی دوجوم ی اهات سرهف هاگن ا. دی راد زاین ار ن آ زا ی اهانی زگ هج دین ک صخشم دی اب، بت سرهف ره ی ارب. دن شاب ی احفص کی زا، هن و من ی ارب. دن بای شی امن دی اب اهانی زگ نی ای تلالح هج هب و بی ترت هج هب دی ری گب می مصت دب اب هب بت سرهف کی ن در کاچ وک، هژاو دی لک اب وجت سچ ن اکم اتی اس ن اگدن کدی دزاب هب دی هاوخ ب دی اش هاگنی زگ مادرک دی ری گب می مصت دی اب نی نجمه. دی هدب ار ن آ زاس ابترم تی ل باق ای صاخ ی اهه و مجم داوم دارمه هب تال و صحم زا ت سرهف کی دن مزاین ی زرواشک هاگش ورف اه ن و من ی ارب. دن بای شی امن دی اب رد هیل وا داوم دلی ف طسوت دی اب رما نی ا هک دش ابلیم وجت سچ ل باق تروص هب اهن آ زاین دروم هیل وا دوش هت فرگ رظن رد تال و صحم ی اوت حم عون.
  - دن ن ام هدراد زاین ار ی اوت حم عون هج دی ن ک نی ی عت، تی دوجوم هخاش ریز رد هدش صخشم دلی ف ره ی ارب کت اهدلی ف رث کا. بت سان کمم ن آی ارب ی زاجم رادقم هج و لی بق نی ا زا و ریوصت، خی رات، هداس ن تم دهدب ار دوخ هیل وا داوم ی ارب رادقم دن ج دوره هزاجا دی اب ل و صحم کی، هن و من ی ارب اما دن ت سه ی رادقم.
  - ن اش رادقم هک ی اهدلی ف: دین ک صخشم ار ی دن باهات س دی اهات ی دوجوم هب عاج را ت هج بسانم ی اهدلی ف دن شاب شی اری و ل باق ن امز لوط رد هک ی زاجم ری داقم. دوش هدی زگرب ی باختن ا ت سرهف کی زا دی اب دش اب تال و صحم ی اوت حم عون رد هیل وا داوم دلی ف دن او تایم ل اثم کی. دن ت سه ی بوخ ی ادی دن اک.
  - دن و ش هدافتسا ی اوت حم ی اهات ی دوجوم ری اس هب عاج را ای ارب دن ن او تایم اهدلی ف مادرک دین ک صخشم ای اوت حم عون رد دلی ف کی، دین کلیم ل و صحم ت بث هب مادرقا ن اگدن شورف هک اجن آ زا، هن و من ی ارب دش ابلیم زاین دروم، بت سا هدرک ت بث ارن آ هدن شورف مادرک هکنی اند رک صخشم ی ارب ل و صحم.

بتسا هدش هدروآ آزرواش ک هاگش ورف یارب یی اهون یی اوتحم راتخاس زایل اثم اجنیارد

تی دوجوم عون	تی دوجوم دخاش ریز	تی دوجوم دخاش ریز	اهن و من	اهدلیف
ی اوت حم هنی زگ	ه دا س ه ح ف ص	ه ح ف ص، ی ل صا ه ح ف ص ه را ب ر د	ه ح ف ص ن ت م و ن او ن ع	
ی اوت حم هنی زگ	ه دن ش و ر ف	ر ه ی ا رب ی ا ه ح ف ص ه ا گ ش و ر ف ر د ه دن ش و ر ف	ن ت م، ہ دن ش و ر ف م ان ی ن ا ش ن، ری و ص ت، ه ح ف ص	
ی اوت حم هنی زگ	ل و ص ح م	ر ه ی ا رب ی ا ه ح ف ص ه دش ت ب ث ل و ص ح م	ن ت م، ل و ص ح م م ان ع ا ج را، ری و ص ت، ه ح ف ص ه ک ی ا ه دن ش و ر ف ه ب ه در ک ت ب ث ا ر ل و ص ح م ه ی ل و دا و م ی د ن ب ا ت س د	
ی ش راف س کا ل ب	ی م و م ع	ر د تی ا ری پ ک را ط خا ه ا رم ه ہ ب ه ح ف ص ن ی ی ا پ ی ن ا ش ن و ی را ک ت ع ا س ه ا گ ش و ر ف	ه ب د لی ف ن و د ب ی ص و ص خ	
ی دن ب ا ه ت س د ت را ب ع	ه ی ل و دا و م	دا و م ری ا س و ہ ج و گ، جی و ہ ه ی ل و د	ه ب د لی ف ن و د ب ی ص و ص خ	
س ا م ت م ر ف	ی م و م ع	ی م و م ع س ا م ت م ر ف	و ع و ض و م، لی می ا، م ان م ای پ	
ی ر ب را ک لی ا ف و ر پ	ی جی ہ	ه داد شی ا م ن تی ا س ر د دو شی ا م ن	ه ب د لی ف ن و د ب ی ص و ص خ	

دراد زاین اهن آ ہ ب تی ا س ہ ک ی ا ه ت س رہ ف و

هی حان ای ه ح ف ص ه ح ف ص	ریز و تی دوجوم عون ن آ دخاش	ریز و ترم ر ت لی ف ی دن ب ا ه ح ف ص	ی ز ا س ا ب ت رم ر ت لی ف ی دن ب ا ه ح ف ص	شی ا م ن ل با ق ی ا ه دلی ف
ن ا گ دن ش و ر ف ه ح ف ص	ی اوت حم ی ا ه نی زگ ه دن ش و ر ف	ن ا گ دن ش و ر ف م ا م ت بی ت رت ہ ب، ی ا ب ف ل ا ه ح ف ص	ه دن ش و ر ف م ان، ری و ص ت ن ت م ه ص ال خ	
ت ال و ص ح م ه ح ف ص	ی اوت حم ی ا ه نی زگ ل و ص ح م	ه ی ل و دا و م ا ب ر ت لی ف بی ت رت ہ ب، ی ا ب ف ل ا ه ح ف ص	ل و ص ح م م ان، ری و ص ت	
ت ال و ص ح م ی ران ک را و ن ری خا	ی اوت حم ی ا ه نی زگ ل و ص ح م	ت ب ث ل و ص ح م ۵ نی ر خ ا ه دش	ل و ص ح م م ان، ری و ص ت	

## دی ہ د شی ا زفا ا ر دو خ کرد

- #### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"
- #### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"
- #### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"

## هطوبرم می‌افم

### #### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"

ن‌اگ‌دن‌ن‌کات‌کراش‌م

ب‌س‌ا‌ن‌م‌ن‌ز‌ا‌ر‌ب‌ز‌ا‌ب‌، د‌ا‌ج‌ی‌ا‌ه‌ب‌ن‌آ‌زا‌ت‌ی‌ع‌ب‌ت‌ا‌ب‌ا‌ه‌ل‌ا‌م‌ز‌ا‌س‌ه‌ک‌د‌ن‌ی‌و‌گ‌ل‌و‌م‌ی‌د‌ن‌ی‌آ‌ر‌ف‌ه‌ب‌ی‌ر‌ات‌س‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ش‌د‌ر‌گ‌.

## ۲.۶. موهف‌م: راکش‌درگ و رات‌س‌ا‌ر‌ی

### زاین‌شی‌پ‌ش‌ن‌اد

#### #### 1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### # # ##### ##### #####"

### ؟ت‌س‌ی‌ج‌ی‌ر‌ات‌س‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ش‌د‌ر‌گ

ش‌ی‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌، ن‌ی‌ب‌ز‌ا‌ب‌، د‌ا‌ج‌ی‌ا‌ه‌ب‌ن‌آ‌زا‌ت‌ی‌ع‌ب‌ت‌ا‌ب‌ا‌ه‌ل‌ا‌م‌ز‌ا‌س‌ه‌ک‌د‌ن‌ی‌و‌گ‌ل‌و‌م‌ی‌د‌ن‌ی‌آ‌ر‌ف‌ه‌ب‌ی‌ر‌ات‌س‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ش‌د‌ر‌گ‌.

د‌ن‌ی‌آ‌ر‌ف‌زا‌ی‌ش‌خ‌ب‌د‌ن‌ن‌ا‌و‌ت‌ی‌ا‌م‌ف‌ل‌ت‌خ‌م‌ی‌ا‌ه‌ا‌ش‌ق‌ن‌ا‌ب‌ر‌ف‌ن‌ن‌ی‌د‌ن‌ج‌، ن‌ام‌ز‌ا‌س‌ی‌ا‌ه‌د‌ن‌ی‌آ‌ر‌ف‌و‌ه‌ز‌ا‌د‌ن‌ا‌ه‌ب‌ه‌ج‌و‌ت‌ا‌ب‌ن‌ا‌ر‌ات‌س‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌، د‌ن‌ر‌و‌آ‌ی‌م‌ر‌د‌ش‌ر‌ا‌گ‌ن‌ه‌ب‌و‌ه‌د‌ر‌ک‌ی‌ر‌و‌آ‌ع‌م‌ج‌ا‌ر‌ت‌اع‌ال‌ط‌ا‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ر‌ا‌ش‌ت‌ن‌ا‌ه‌ب‌ن‌آ‌ر‌ی‌غ‌ت‌ت‌س‌ا‌و‌خ‌ر‌د‌و‌ی‌ن‌ی‌ب‌ز‌ا‌ب‌، ش‌ی‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌زا‌س‌پ‌د‌ش‌ا‌ب‌.

ه‌ا‌گ‌ن‌دو‌خ‌ر‌د‌ا‌ر‌ا‌ه‌ل‌آ‌ت‌ی‌ع‌ض‌و‌ه‌ک‌د‌ن‌ت‌س‌ه‌ر‌ا‌ش‌ت‌ن‌ا‌م‌د‌ع‌ا‌ی‌ر‌ا‌ش‌ت‌ن‌ا‌م‌چ‌ر‌ب‌ک‌ی‌ل‌م‌ا‌ش‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ع‌ا‌و‌ن‌ا‌، ا‌م‌ش‌ت‌ی‌ا‌س‌ر‌د‌:

د‌ن‌ت‌س‌ه‌ه‌د‌ه‌ا‌ش‌م‌ل‌ب‌ا‌ق‌ت‌ی‌ا‌س‌ب‌و‌ن‌ی‌ب‌ط‌ا‌خ‌م‌م‌ا‌م‌ت‌ی‌ا‌ر‌ب‌ه‌د‌ش‌ر‌ش‌ت‌ن‌م‌ی‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ی‌ا‌ه‌ا‌ه‌ن‌ی‌ز‌گ‌.

ت‌ی‌و‌ه‌ز‌ا‌ر‌ح‌ا‌ن‌ا‌ر‌ب‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ط‌س‌و‌ت‌ا‌م‌، د‌ن‌ت‌س‌ی‌ن‌ه‌د‌ه‌ا‌ش‌م‌ل‌ب‌ا‌ق‌ت‌ی‌ا‌س‌ب‌و‌ن‌ی‌ب‌ط‌ا‌خ‌م‌ی‌ا‌ر‌ب‌ه‌د‌ش‌ن‌r‌ش‌t‌n‌m‌ی‌ا‌و‌t‌h‌م‌.

ر‌د‌ر‌ی‌د‌م‌ط‌س‌و‌ت‌ه‌ک‌ی‌ت‌ر‌و‌ص‌ر‌د‌، د‌ن‌ن‌ک‌ل‌ی‌م‌ی‌ن‌ا‌ب‌ی‌ت‌ش‌پ‌ه‌خ‌س‌ن‌ی‌ر‌ی‌گ‌د‌ر‌زا‌ی‌ی‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ت‌ی‌د‌و‌ج‌و‌م‌ع‌ا‌و‌ن‌ا‌ر‌ث‌ک‌ا‌ه‌ب‌ی‌ن‌ی‌ب‌ز‌ا‌ب‌ر‌ه‌زا‌س‌پ‌ر‌ا‌ز‌ف‌ا‌م‌ر‌ن‌، د‌ش‌ا‌ب‌ل‌ا‌ع‌ف‌ت‌ی‌ل‌ب‌ا‌ق‌ن‌ی‌ر‌گ‌ا‌. د‌ش‌ا‌ب‌ه‌د‌ش‌ل‌ا‌ع‌ف‌ت‌ی‌د‌و‌ج‌و‌م‌ه‌خ‌s‌ن‌ی‌ر‌ی‌ز‌ه‌ب‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ن‌ی‌ا‌. د‌ن‌ک‌ل‌ی‌م‌د‌ا‌ج‌ی‌ا‌ر‌ی‌ی‌ا‌ه‌ا‌ت‌ش‌ا‌د‌د‌ای‌ن‌آ‌ت‌ا‌ر‌ی‌ی‌غ‌ت‌ه‌ر‌ا‌ب‌ر‌د‌و‌د‌ز‌ا‌د‌ر‌پ‌ای‌م‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ی‌م‌ی‌د‌ق‌ه‌خ‌س‌ن‌ی‌ز‌ا‌س‌ه‌ر‌ی‌خ‌ذ‌د‌ه‌د‌ل‌ی‌م‌ا‌ر‌ی‌ل‌ب‌ق‌ه‌خ‌س‌ن‌ک‌ی‌ه‌ب‌ت‌ش‌گ‌ز‌ا‌ب‌و‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ه‌ج‌خ‌ی‌ر‌ا‌ت‌ر‌و‌ر‌م‌ه‌ز‌ا‌ج‌ا‌ا‌م‌ش‌

ن‌ا‌گ‌د‌ن‌ن‌ک‌د‌ی‌ل‌و‌ت‌ی‌ا‌ر‌ب‌ی‌ر‌ات‌س‌ا‌ر‌ی‌و‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ش‌د‌ر‌گ‌ک‌ی‌د‌ی‌ن‌ا‌و‌ت‌ل‌ی‌م‌، ا‌ه‌ل‌ن‌ی‌ب‌ز‌ا‌ب‌و‌ر‌ا‌ش‌t‌n‌ا‌م‌د‌ع‌م‌چ‌r‌ب‌زا‌ه‌د‌اف‌t‌s‌ا‌ب‌ه‌ب‌ب‌ط‌ا‌خ‌م‌ه‌ب‌ا‌و‌ت‌ح‌م‌ش‌ی‌ا‌م‌ن‌ن‌و‌د‌ب‌ی‌ل‌ص‌ا‌ت‌ی‌ا‌س‌ر‌د‌ه‌ک‌ی‌ت‌ر‌و‌ص‌ه‌ب‌د‌ی‌ر‌و‌آ‌د‌و‌ج‌و‌ب‌ن‌ا‌ر‌ات‌s‌ا‌r‌ی‌و‌و‌ا‌و‌t‌h‌م‌ر‌ی‌ی‌غ‌ت‌د‌اد‌م‌اج‌ن‌ا‌د‌ی‌ا‌ب‌ه‌ک‌ی‌ر‌ا‌ک‌ا‌ه‌ن‌ت‌، د‌ش‌ا‌b‌ر‌ا‌ش‌t‌n‌ا‌ه‌د‌ام‌آ‌ا‌و‌t‌h‌م‌ه‌ک‌ی‌n‌ا‌م‌ز‌. د‌ن‌z‌a‌d‌r‌p‌b‌b‌ن‌آ‌ی‌s‌r‌r‌b‌و‌ش‌ی‌a‌ر‌ی‌و‌ت‌s‌a‌n‌آ‌r‌a‌sh‌t‌n‌a‌t‌ی‌ع‌ض‌و‌

### طب‌ت‌رم‌ت‌اع‌و‌ض‌و‌م

- #### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"

- [\*\*#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"\*\*](#)

## یتاعل اطم عبام

رد زین ار راشتننا زا سپ دنیآرف دنهاوخلیم بلغا اهانامzas، مینكلیم تبحص نیالنآی اوتحم زا یتقو روکشدرگ هب اهانامzasی خرب. دنزادربب نآیناسرزورب هب دشاب مزال دیاش اوتحمی اهمیت: دنریگب رظن دریگلیم رارق راکشدرگ یاجک رد اوتحم عون ره دشاب صخشم هک یتروص هب دنراد زاین یرتاھدیچیپ، هنومن یارب [ ] ددرگلیم هدافتسا نآیارب یراکشدرگ تیعوضو هج زا و تسیچ نآری ربراک یاهزوجم و اهشقن [ ] دشرشتنم و ینیبزاب دنمزاين، سیوناشیپ.

دینک هدافتسا [Workbench](#) یاهنوزفا ھعومجم زا دین اوتلیم امش، رتاھدیچیپ یاهراکشدرگ یارب

نأگدننکاتکراشم

طسوت هدش شیاری و و هتشون [Diána Lakatos](#) [Pronovix](#) و [Grant Dunham](#).

# بصن .3 لصف

## 3.1. رورسی اهزاین شیپ : موهفم

### ؟تسیج لآپوردی ارجا اهزاین شیپ

#### کسیدی اضافه

ی رگیدی اهبلاق و اههنوزفا زا هک یتی اس بوی ارب . دراد زاین اضافه تیاب اگم ۱۵ هب لقادح بصن کی ی رانگرایی اهله اگی اپی ارب هک دیش اب هتشاد رظن رد . تس امزال اضافه تیاب اگم ۶۰ دنک هدافتسا دی راد زاین ی رتشیبی اضافه هب نابیت شپی اهله اف و ناربراک طسوت هدش

#### رورس ب و

ی اهله اع متسیسیور هک ۲ هخسن یچ آپیور لآپورد هتسه . تس ادوچوم رورس ب و نی رتل و ادمیچ آپApache دنکلیم راک ، دش اب هتشاد رارق هنوزفا اب هارمه زودنی و و شاتنی کم ، سکونیل ونگ mod\_rewrite لیاف زا هدافتسا ارب AllowOverride All ترابع لماش دیاب یچ آپ آرد VirtualHost ی دن برکی پ .htaccess دهدب ار لآپورد

Nginx لآپورد هتسه . تس اهظفاح زا نیاب هدافتسا و درکلمع ، الاب ی نامزمه یور رب رورس ب و نیا زکرمت هتشاد رارق زودنی و و شاتنی کم ، سکونیل ونگی اهله اع متسیسیور هک ۱.۱ هخسن سکیانی جنایور دش اب هدافتسا لباق و لاعف دیاب زن هنوزفا . دنکلیم راک ، دش اب nginx\_http\_rewrite\_module

Hiawatha متسیسیوریک را و تس اهدا ن آزا هدافتسا نینجمه . تس اتینما یور رورس ب و نیا زکرمت یل و معم نامزدد رورس ب و نیا هک دهدهیم ناشن دشن اهله اع ماجن اناققحم طسوت هکیت اقیقت . درانگلیم هنوزفا . دهدهیم ناشن دوخ زا رت هب درکلمع هلمح نامز ردیل و دراد اهرازفالمرن دیاس اب هباشمی رکلمع دش اب هدافتسا لباق و لاعف دیاب URL Toolkit

Microsoft IIS لآپورد هتسه . تس ای دایس بی اههنوزفالماش هکتس ازودنی ول اع متسیسی صوصخم رورس ب و نیا دنکلیم راک ، دن ش اب هتشاد PHP زای بسانم دن برکی پ هک ی نامز رورس ب و نیا ۷ و ۶ و ۵ یاهله هخسن هب هنوزفا زا ۷ هخسن رد ای ثلثاً صخش رازبا کی زا دین او تلیم ، تس اذاین ذیمتی اهنه اشن هب هک اجن آزا دین ک هدافتسا URL Rewrite

#### داده اگی اپ

دین ک هدافتسا دری زی اهاده اگی اپ زای کی :

- MySQL - 5.5.3 (MariaDB 5.5.20، Percona 5.5.8)  
InnoDB
- PostgreSQL - 9.1.2  
RtAlab ای
- SQLite - 3.4.2  
RtAlab ای

PHP

ر ت ال ا ب ا ي 5.5.9 PHP

یت اعل اطم عب انم

ن اگ دن ن کات ک راش م

### 3.2. موهفه ای اهرازبا: فاضایی

؟تسا دوجوم نازاساتي اس يارب ياه رازبا هج

رتمک نامزد و رتلقیقد، رتعایرس ار اهاتیاس ناوتهیم اهلن آزا هدافتسا اب هک دراد دوجوی رایس بی اهرازبا تختاس.

## Drush

Git

**Git** یور هدش داجی ا تارییغت دین اوتایم ن آزا ھدافتسا اب ھک تسا ھخسن لرتنک متسیس کی تارییغت ن درک ن احتما ن اکمما . دینک لابند اربلاق ای هنوزفا کی زایشخب ای تی اسی اهالی اف یارب دناوتایم نیز نجمه . بشگراپ لیاف کی زارتالباقی ھخسن هب ، زاین تروص رد و دنکلیم ھدارف ار یارب ی درادن اتسا هب نونکا **Git** . دوش ھدافتسا فلت خمی اهاتی اس و اهالی افی دن برکی پی زاسام اگمه .تسا هدش ای دبت بوی اهاظوری

# دین اور خوب اور با طمہ حمادا دستشیب تاعالیٰ طائیں

Devel

لی لحـت، دکـی سـرـب و نـدرـگـاـبـی دـهـلـمـجـ زـاـ دـعـسـوـتـ فـیـ اـظـوـ رـیـ ظـنـیـ اـهـتـیـلـ اـعـفـیـ اـرـبـ  
دـرـیـ گـلـیـ رـاـرـقـ هـدـافـتـسـ درـوـمـیـشـیـ اـمـزـآـیـ اـوـتـحـمـ دـیـلـ وـتـ وـهـدـادـهـاـگـیـ اـیـ اـهـوـجـ وـسـرـبـ

# ؟درادی صوص خب زیچ هچ Drush

Drush طبخ رازبا کی نت خاص اس زا راده گن و اس اهاتی راکهار دک تسس اس زا راده گن و نت خاص اس ارب نامرف طبخ رازبا کی نف نیلوئی سم و نازاساتی اس زا رای سب بدلهیم هئ ارا تایل مع زا اهدرت سگ فی ط ارتب ل اپ وردی رب راک دی فم رای سب ارن آش زوم آی ارب زاین دروم نامز و دنن ک هدافت سا Prush زان کمم ایاجات دن هدلم حیچ روت دراد دوجو و Prush زا هدافت سی ارب بی فلت خم لی ال د دنن ابلیم

- اھبلاق و اھلنوزفا، هیاپ رازفامرن بصن نوچمھی فیاظوی ارب ارتاروتسد زایدایز دادعت و اھژاورذگ ددجم می ظننت؟ وج و سرپ و ریگاتشونور هلمج زا، هداده اگی اپ تایلمع ای ارجا؛ دنکلیم کھاری دن راد ار دوخ هب طوبرم **Drush** تاروتسد زین اھبلاق و اھلنوزفا خرب. تقووم هظفاح یزاس کاپ تسا رتاعی رس اهن ت هن کی فارگ طبار اب هسیا قم رد **Drush** زا هدافتسا اب یتی ریدم فیاظو ماجنا.
- ری اس اب ار نآ دین اوتایم رتاهدی جی پ فیاظو ماجنا ارب، تسا نامرف طخ طبار کی **Drush** هک اجن آزا دین ک بی کرت رورس تاروتسد.
- سرپ یارج، هن و من ی ارب، دن رادن رارق ل اپ وردی کی فارگ طبار رد هک تسا رتاشی ب تان اکمال ماش هداده اگی اپ یاهوچ.

نامرف طخ می سرتتسا بصن نآی ورل اپ ورد هک رورس هب دی اب، دی راد ار **Drush** زا هدافتسا دصق رگا ی اھل معل اروتسد ی ارب. دین ک هدافتسا نآی ور **Drush** راگزاس هخسن زا هک دی راد راین و دی شاب هتشاد تاروتسد هب طوبرم تادن تسم نی نچمھ. دین ک هعجارم **##### Drush** هب هخسن ی راگزاس و بصن دراد دوج و تی اس نی ارد **Drush**.

## دوشایم هدافتسا هجی ارب **Composer**

ندرک صخش م اب هدن هدھعسوت هک ی تروص هب #PHP ی اھی گتسا باو تی ریدم ارب تسا رازبا **Composer** ن آ بصن و دولناد دنی آرف تی ریدم هب رازفامرن نیا، دراد ار ن آزا هدافتسا دصق هک ی اھن اخباتک هخسن دزادرپایم.

ی اھن اخباتک ی رای سب زا هدافتسا ارب هک ارج، تسا **Composer** ی اهربراک زا ی کی دوخ ل اپ ورد هتسه ار ل اپ ورد هتسه هک ی ن امز. دراد زاین رازبا نیا هب، دن تسم هبچ او رازفامرن حی حص ی ارجا ی ارب هک، ی ج راخ دین ک دولناد ار دش اب هن اخباتک زا راگزاس هخسن لم امش هک ی ن اگی اب لی اف کی دی اب ای، دین کلیم بصن دری ذپ تروص ی ج راخ ی اھن اخباتک دولناد راک ات هدرک ارجا ار **Composer** ای.

هنوزفا کی، هن و من ی ارب، دن کلیم هدافتسا ی ج راخ ی اھن اخباتک زا زین ی رب راکاه عماج ی اھلنوزفا خرب ی ای فارغ ج هنوزفا کی و دش اب هتشاد زاین دوخ صاخ هن اخباتک هب تسا نکمم کوبسی ف تی عماج هارمه هب هنوزفا کی بصن ی ارب. دش اب دن مزاین ی ای فارغ ج هقطنم صی خشت تان اکما هب تسا نکمم دی راد **Composer** ی ارجا هب زاین، ی ج راخ ی اھن اخباتک.

## تسا دوجوم بلاق و هنوزفا ن اگدن هدھعسوت ی ارب هجی اهرازبا

دنتس ه دوجوم بلاق و هنوزفا ن اگن هدھعسوت ی ارب ورشی پ رازبا، الاب هدش هراشا رازبا رب هوالع

### Drupal Console

دزادرپایم تی اس اب ل ماعت و هیلوا ی اهدک دیلوت هب هک تسا نامرف طخ رازبا کی **Drupal Console** ی شخ بی شی ام زآ ی اوتحم داجیا و اھبلاق و اھلنوزفا بصن، مرف ای کالب دک دیلوت، هن و من ی ارب دری گلیم هر هب **Symfony** لوسن ک زا رازبا نیا. تسا ن آ درکلمع

### Coder

ل اپ ورد ی اهدرادن اتسا زا امش بلاق ای هنوزفا ای آ دن کلیم ی سررب هک تسا نامرف طخ رازبا کی **Coder** دن ک ی سی و نه مان رب ی اه اطخ حال صا هب مادقا دن او تایم نی نچمھ. ریخ ای دن کلیم تی عبت.

رگروم ردی بای ابی ع رازبا

ی ادزال اکش، هده اشم هزاجا امش هب هک دن تسم هی رازبا لم امش مورک و سکافری اف هل مج زا ب و ی اه رگروم حفص زای تم سق ی ورن درک تسا رکیل ک اب. دن هلیم ار **HTML** **CSS** **JavaScript** و

طہریم تاعوضوم

## #### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"

یت اعل اطم عب انم

- "##### # Drupal.org" روبرا کاه عما ج تادن تسم هحفص رد
  - "##### ## Composer ## ##### Drupal.org" روبرا کاه عما ج تادن تسم هحفص رد

ن اگ دن ن کات ک راش م

طسوت هدش شاري و هتشون Boris Doesborg و Jennifer Hodgdon.

### 3.3. بصنی اربیزاسهادامآ

فده

زاین دروم یاهزاین شی پمامت تیری دم و ل اپورد بصن یارب بسانم یهار باختنا

ڈائیکٹیوں کی سیر

- #### 3.1, "#####: ##### ##### ####"
  - #### 3.2, "#####: ##### ##### ####"

تی اس ی اہزادی نشیپ

دینک بصن ار رازبا نیا ادتبا ،دیراد ار لآپورد بصن دصق Drush اب رگا [##### 3.2, #####](#)  
[##### ##### #####](#) دینک هدهاشم ار [##### ##### #####](#).

۱۵۰

- ل اپ ورد ب صنیارب شور کی باختنا 1.

رادی اپ ب صن کی هب هقیقد ۲۰ زا رتمک ات دین ک هدافتسا لابوردت امداخ نیالن هدئارا کی زا  
دین ک هدهاشم ار [##### ##### ##### ##### ## Drupal.org](#). دیبا ای تسد لابوردت زا

یابزیم سیورس رد دوجوم هدنن کابصن کی زا هدافتسا  
طوبرم تادنتسه ک تسان کمم، دیراد اردوخ یابزیم سیورس قیرط زا لابوردت بصن دصق رگا  
دین ک ادی پ سیورس نآ رد ارن آدب [##### ## ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### #####](#)  
دین ک هدهاشم ار [## Drupal.org](#).

زا هدافتسا Drush  
دیراد زاین تیاس رد Drush بصن و نامرف طخی سرتسد هب راکنی ای ارب [#### 3.2, #####:](#)  
دین ک هدهاشم ار [##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### #####](#).

بو تحقت هدنن کابصن کی زا هدافتسا  
زاین یابزیم رورس ب اوی لحوم متسی سیور زاین درومی اضف هب لابوردت سد بصنی ارب  
دیراد.

هدام آ طیح م کی زا هدافتسا  
هدافتسا دراد دوخ ردارن آزاین درومی اهرازف المرن مامت ولابورده کی زاجم نیشام ای هدام آ طیح م کی زا  
ن اونع اب دوخ لماع متسی سیور زگی ارب. دین ک [##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### ##### #####](#)  
دین ک هعجارم ار [##### ##### ##### ##### ## Drupal.org](#).

2. رد دوخ تیاسی ارب یانشن کی، دیراد ار بو تحقت هدنن کابصن ای Drush زا هدافتسا دصق رگا  
امش رظن دروم ناکم هک دین ک لصاح نانی مطا. دین ک صخشیم یابزیم سیورس اوی لحوم متسی سیور  
دش اب هدهشی دنبرکی پیتسرد هب لابوردت تیاس یابزیم ای ارب.
3. باسح کی هارمه هب هداده اگی اپ کی، دیراد ار بو تحقت هدنن کابصن ای Drush زا هدافتسا دصق رگا  
دین ک داجیا لم اکی اهی سرتسد اب هن اگادج ریرب راک.
4. هکی تروص هب هدرک دراو نامرف طخ رد ار ورشی پ تاروت سد، دیراد ار Drush زا هدافتسا دصق رگا  
example و DB\_NAME و DB\_USER و DB\_PASS و دریگلیم رارق نآ رد لابورده ک تسان ای روتکریاد مان  
دنتسه هداده اگی اپ هب سرتسد ای ارب زاین درومی اهرتمناراپ.

```
drush dl drupal --drupal-project-rename=example
cd example
drush site-install standard --db-url='mysql://DB_USER:DB_PASS@localhost/DB_NAME'
```

5. دولپ آیتسد تروص هب ار لابورده اهله اف، دیراد ار بو بحقت هدنن کابصن زا هدافتسا دصق رگا  
دین ک هدف لیاف دولنادی ارب سپس؛ دین ک هعجارم [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#)

a. دین ک کیلک <https://www.drupal.org> یور و هتفر [Download & Extend](#) ریسم هب.

# Download & Extend

## Download

[Download Drupal 8.1.10](#)

[Try a hosted Drupal demo](#)

See [Drupal's project page](#) for more information, older versions, and project development. Explore hosting options for your site. Browse [documentation](#) for more help and information.

- b. دولناد هحفص هب ات [ ]بسانم هحسن هب هجوت اب [ ]هدرک کیلک Download Drupal همکدیور دیورب.

### Downloads

#### Recommended releases

These are stable, well-tested versions that are actively supported.

##### Drupal core 8.1.4

Released: Jul 06 2016

The next patch release of Drupal 8 is ready for new development and use on production sites.

##### Drupal core 7.44

Released: Jun 15 2016

If you need stability and features from the widest variety of contributed modules and themes, this is the version for you.

- c. کیلک نآیور و هدرک باختنی Recommended releases زا دیراد ار نآدولناد دصدق هکیاهحسن دینک.

#### Releases

## drupal 8.1.3

[Download drupal-8.1.3.tar.gz tar.gz](#)

11.97 MB

[Download drupal-8.1.3.zip zip](#)

19.55 MB

- دین ک دولناد دوخ هنایاریور ار **tar.gz** هخسن.  
و هدش لنپ لرتنک دراو. دین ک دولپ آینابزیم سیورسی ربراک باسح هب ار هدش دولناد لیاف  
دین ک دولپ آجنیا رد ارالیاف. دیورب **HTML** یروتکریاد هب.  
دوشایم دیدج یروتکریاد کی داجیا هب رجنم هک دیزاس جراخ هدرش فتللاح زا ار **zip** لیاف  
طبار، تسانین سکونیل ونگ تخت امشینابزیم سیورسی دیرادنی سرتس دل انیمزک هب رگا  
ینابزیم رورس هب رگا. دشاب هتشاد راکنیا ای اربیاهویش دیابینابزیم سیورسی کیفارگ  
دنیک هدافتسا ورشیپ روتسد زا دیناوتیم دیرادل انیمرتی سرتس دوخ

```
tar -xzf drupal-8.3.2.tar.gz
```

- دشاب هتفرنیب زا لباق دنیآرفی طرگم، دینک فذح رورس زا ار هدرش فلیاف  
یارب امشینابزیم سیورسی دنبركیپ اب هکیترووص هب دینک ددجمی راذگمان اری روتکریاد  
دشاب بسانتم تیاسبویی اسانش

## دیه شرتسگ ار دوخ کرد

دیراد ار راک ماجنا دصق ب و تخت هدننکابصن زا هدافتسا اب رگا **#### 3.4, ##### ##### ##### ####**  
دینک هدهاشم ار.

## یتاعلاطمعبانم

### Drush

ناگدننکاتکراشم

هارمه ۵ رد [Drew Gorton](#) و [Michael Lenahan](#) رد [erdfisch](#) [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)  
و [Jojo Alphonso](#) رد [Red Crackle](#).

## بصن دنیآرفی ارجا 3.4.

### فده

هدننکابصنی ارجا اب ریدم باسح داجیا ول اپورد بصن.

### زاينشیپ شناد

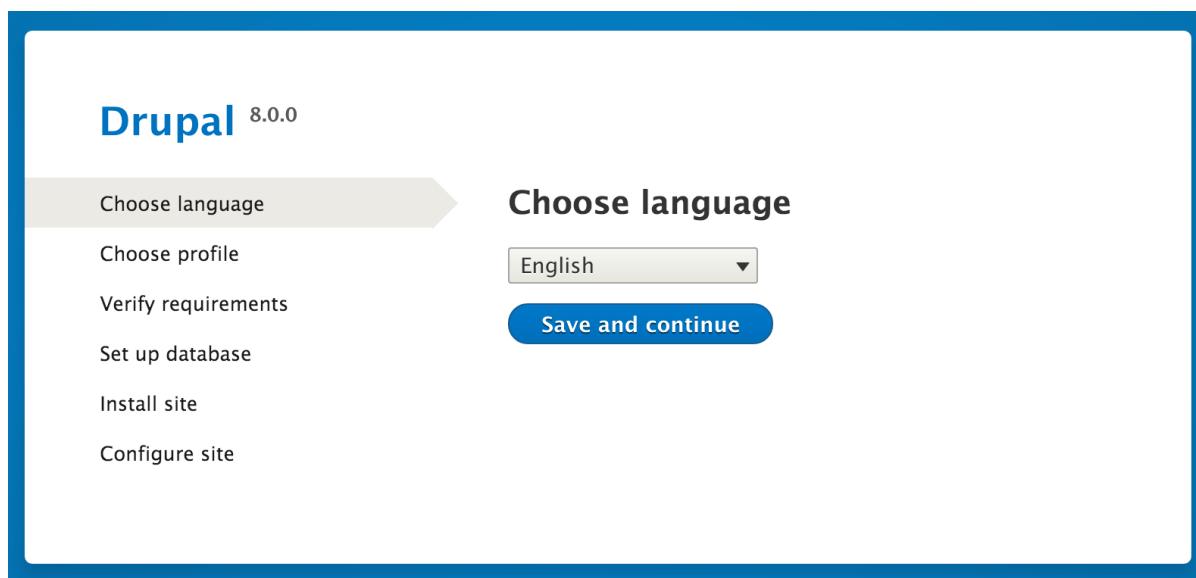
**#### 3.1, #####: ##### ##### ####**

## تیاسی اهزاينشی پ

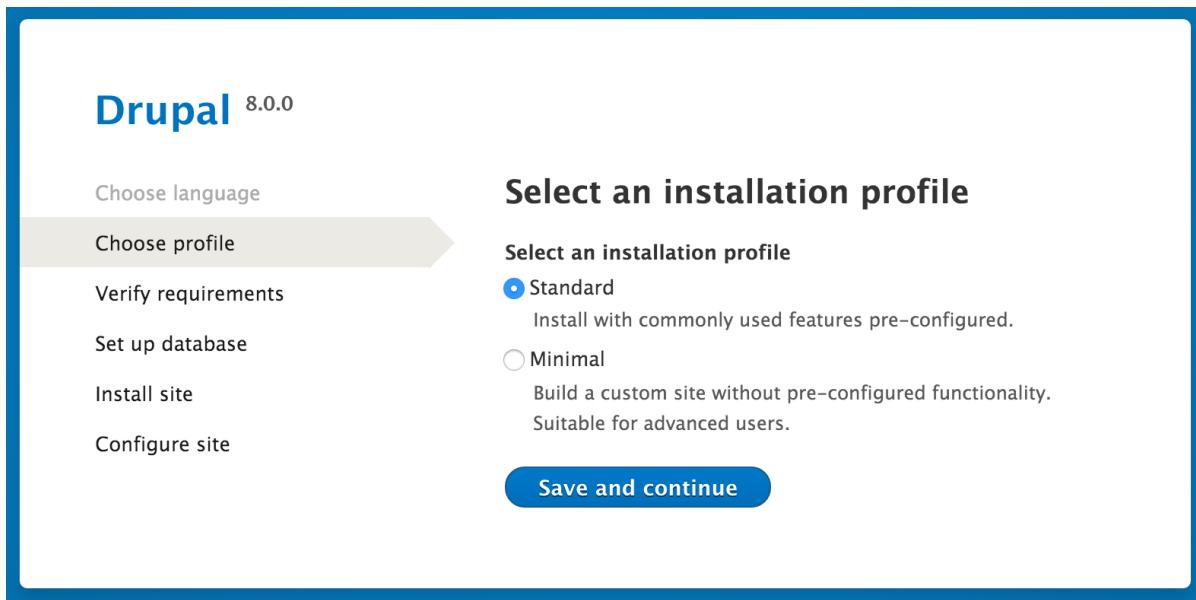
**#### 3.3, "##### #### # ##"**

### اهماگ

- نکمم، دینکایم هدافتسا و مد تیاسی ای نابزیم سیورس رد کیلک کی اب بصن دنیآرف کی زا رگا یتسد تروص هب ارل اپوردی اهالی اف رگا. دینک هدهاشم ارورشیپی اهDENیآرف زایشخبا ای ماماتتسا دیورب دوخ تیاسبوی اشن هب و هدرک زاب رگرورم کی، هدننکابصن زاغآی ارب، دیشاب هدرک دولپ آ.
- زا دین اوتفیم نینجمه. یس راف، هنومنی ارب؛ دینک باختننا هدننکابصن هحفص نیلووا رد ارنابز کی تروص هب یباختننا نابزی ارب زاین درومی اهالی اف. دینک باختننا تسرهف رد دوجومی اهانابز ری اس یور، نابز باختننا زاسپ. دوش ماجنا نابزنآ هب بصن دنیآرف همادا ات دنوشلایم دولناد راکدوخ *Save and continue* کیلک دینک.

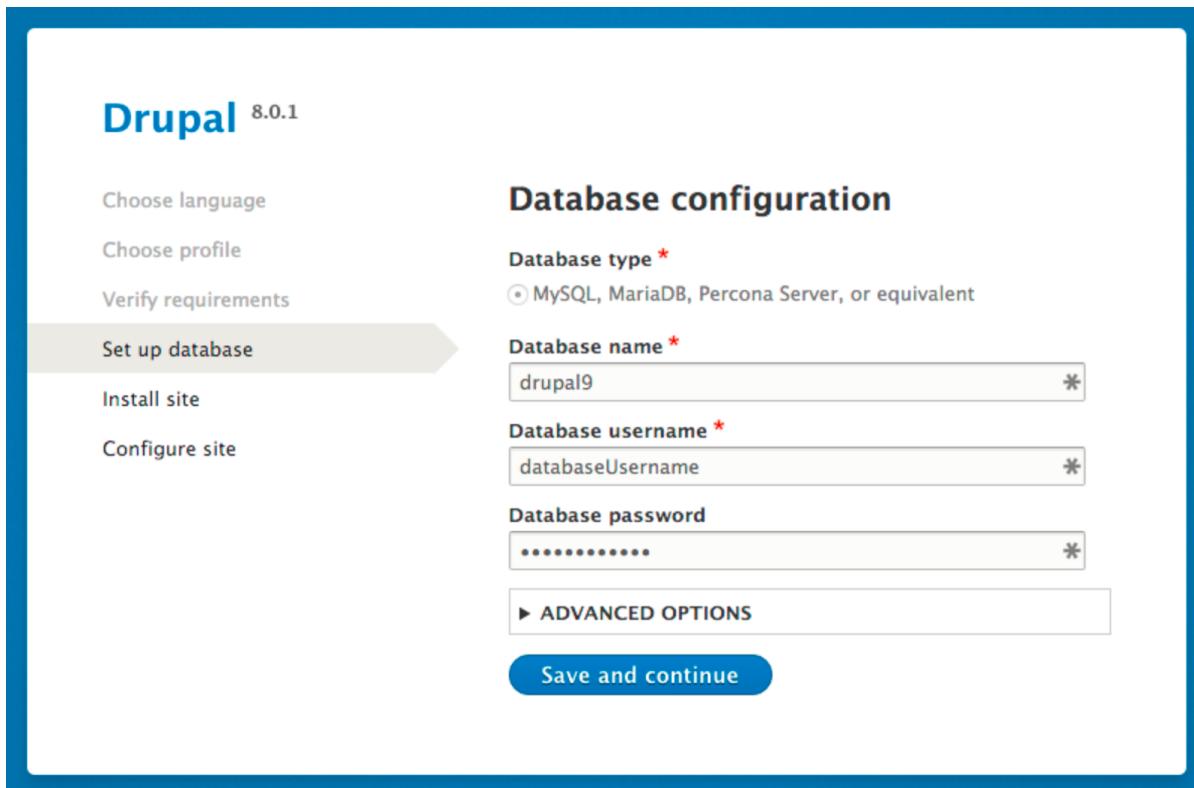


- ی خشمی اهاتیل باق و اهیگژی و لماش بصنی اهالی افورب. دینک باختننا ار بصن لی افورب کی هارمه هب لایپورد هتسه زا هن اگادج دولناد کی تروص هب هک دنتسه تیاسی نوگانوگ عاونا ی ارب لی افورب. تسا بصن لی افورب ود لماش لایپورد. دنوشلایم هئارا نآ زاین درومی اهبلاق و اهانوزفا یور و هدرک باختننا ار درادن اتسا بصن *Save and continue*. دینک کیلک دینک.

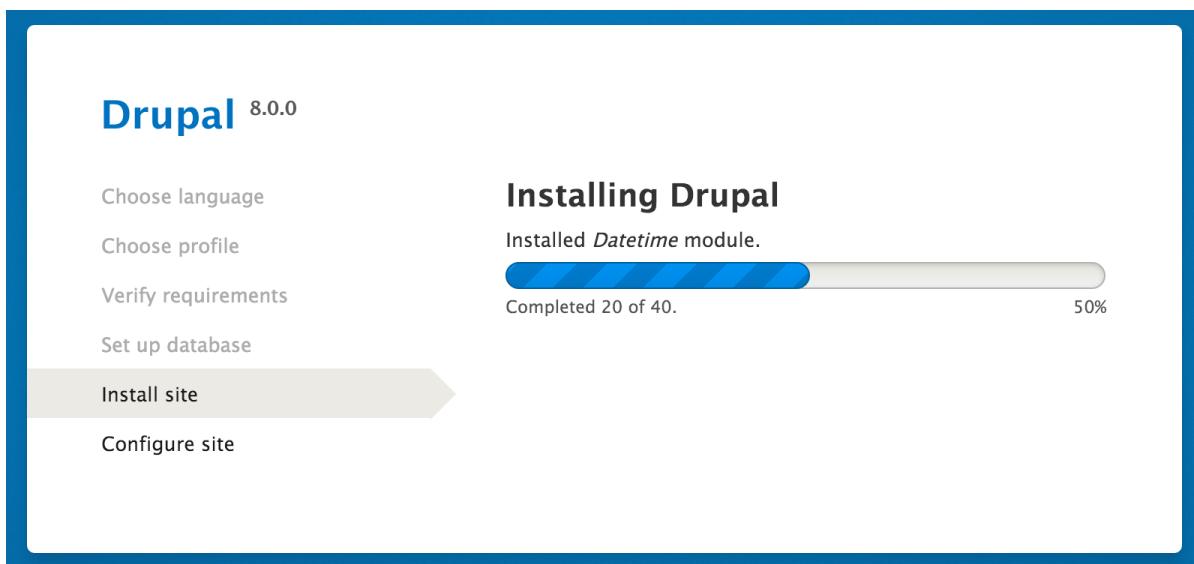


4. دشاب ھتشاد دوجو یلکشم رگا. تسا رورس زاین دروم طی ارشیس ررب بصن دنی آرف رد ی دعب ماگ تر وص هب ھدن نکاب صن، تروص نیاری غ رد. ددرگایم نای امن نآلح یارب صاخ تاروت سد اب یا ھفص دوریم ی دعب ماگ هب را کدوخ.
5. ار دی درک داجیا ["#### 3.3, ##### ##### ##### ####"](#) لصف رد هک ھداده اگی اپ زاین دروم تایی زج دین ک کیلک *Save and continue* یورس پس ھئارا.

دلیف مان	تاحیضوت	رادقم
ھداده اگی اپ مان	ھب ھدش ھدادی شرافس مان ھداده اگی اپ	drupal8
ھداده اگی اپ ی رب را کامان	ھدش داجیا ی رب را کامان	databaseUsername
ھداده اگی اپ ھزاورذگ	ھدش باختن ھزاورذگ	



6. ار بصن دنی آرفی ورشی پ نازیم هک تسا *Installing Drupal* ناونع ابی شی امی پ راون لمаш دعب ماگ دورایم دعب دح فص هب را کدوخ تروص هب، بصن نای اپ زا سپ. دهدلیم ناشن.



7. رد هدش داجی ای ربراک باسح هکنی اه تکن. تسا اتی اس هرابرد هی اپ تاعال طای خربی دنب برکی پ رخآ ماگ باسح نیا هرابرد مهم تاعال طای ارب. دراد ارمزالی اهی سرتسد مامت هک تسا ری دم باسح نامه هل حرم نیا

"admin" مان زا دىن اوتلەم دىن كەدەاشم ار [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)، يىربراك دشاب درف برصح نم و نما نآھب طوب رم ھۇاورىزگە كەدىباي نانىمطا و دىن كەدەافتىس ان آىارب.

دىن كەرىپ ورشىپ تاعالطا اب ارمىف +

+

دلىف مان	تاجىضوت	رادقىم
تىاس مان	تىاس يارب ھەش باختنامان	<a href="#">Anytown Farmers Market</a>
تىاس لىمەيائىناسن	ھب ھەش ھەداد صاصتىخالىمەيائىاس	<a href="mailto:info@example.com">info@example.com</a>
ىربراك مان	رىدمىربراك باسح	<a href="#">admin</a>
ھۇاورىزگ	رىدمىاربىباختنامەۇاورىزگ	
ھۇاورىزگ دىئات	ىباختنامەۇاورىزگ راركت	
لىمەيائىناسن	رىدمىوصىخەملىمەيائىناسن	<a href="mailto:admin@example.com">admin@example.com</a>

دىراذگىب دوخ ضرفىشىپ تلاجھب ار ھەنامىقابىاھدىف دىن اوتلەم +

+

# Drupal 8.0.1

Choose language

Choose profile

Verify requirements

Set up database

Install site

Configure site

## Configure site

### SITE INFORMATION

**Site name \***

Anytown Farmers Market

**Site email address \***

info@example.com

Automated emails, such as registration information, will be sent from this address. Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent these emails from being flagged as spam.

### SITE MAINTENANCE ACCOUNT

**Username \***

admin

Several special characters are allowed, including space, period (.), hyphen (-), apostrophe ('), underscore (\_), and the @ sign.

**Password \***

\*\*\*\*\*

Password strength: Strong

**Confirm password \***

\*\*\*\*\*

Passwords match: yes

To make your password stronger:

- Add uppercase letters

**Email address \***

admin@example.com

### REGIONAL SETTINGS

**Default country**

- None -

Select the default country for the site.

**Default time zone**

Europe/Berlin

By default, dates in this site will be displayed in the chosen time zone.

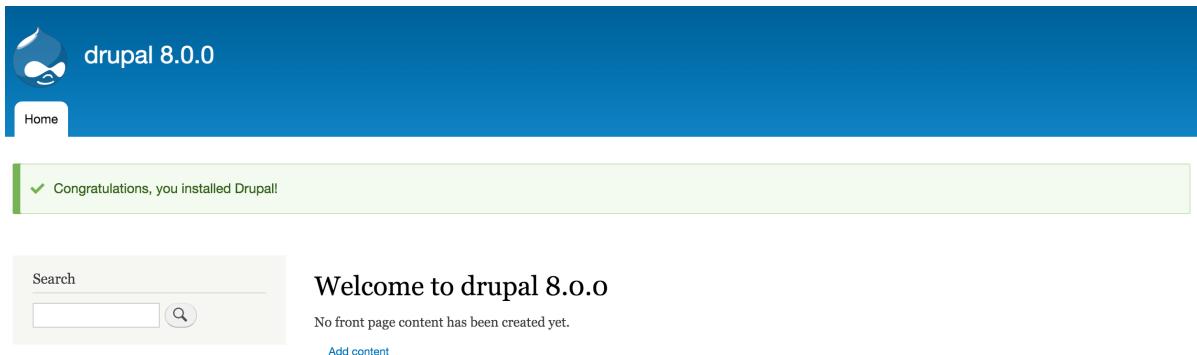
### UPDATE NOTIFICATIONS

**Update notifications**

- Check for updates automatically
- Receive email notifications

The system will notify you when updates and important security releases are available for installed components. Anonymous information about your site is sent to [Drupal.org](#).

1. دىن ک کىل ک يور *Save and continue*.
2. مای پ لم اش هک دوشایم تى ادە دوخ تى اس تسىخن هحفص هب ھل حرم نى ارد.  
تسىخن هحفص ئالاب رد **#### # ####! #### # ##### # #**



## دىد شىرىت سىگ ار دوخ كرد

دىن ک يسربىلى امتحا ل اكشا هن و گرە يسربىارب ار تىعوضو شرازگ هحفص  
[Status Report](#) دىن ک ھداشىم ار **#### 12.5, "Concept:**

## طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### # #####"](#)

## ىتاعلاطم عبانم

"##### # # ##### #####" در براكاهىم اج تادىن تسىخن هحفص رد [Drupal.org](http://Drupal.org)

ن اگىدنىن كات كراشىم

Joe Shindelar رد [Drupalize.Me](#) و Jojo Alphonso رد [Red Crackle](#). طسوت ھدىش شىارى و ھتشون

# تی اس ھی اپ ی دن برکی پ 4. ل صفحہ

## 4.1. Concept: Administrative Overview

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

### What is the administrative menu?

The toolbar provided by the core Toolbar module displays the *Manage* administrative menu at the top or left side of the site, for users with permission to see it. This menu provides access to all of the administrative areas of the site. The menu entries will vary depending on which modules are active on your site and the permissions of the person viewing the menu; if you install using the core Standard installation profile and have full administrative permissions, the top-level entries are as follows:



#### Content

Lists and manages existing content, and allows creation of new content.

#### Structure

Contains a list of links for managing structural elements of the site, such as blocks, content types, menus, and taxonomy.

#### Appearance

Manages themes and appearance-related settings.

#### Extend

Manages the installation and uninstallation of modules.

#### Configuration

Contains links to settings pages for various site features.

#### People

Manages users, roles, and permissions.

#### Reports

Contains links to logs, update information, search information, and other information about the site's status.

#### Help

Lists help topics for installed modules that provide them.

The arrow button on the far right side of the second line of the toolbar (or far left side, if the site is being viewed using a right-to-left-reading language like Arabic) can be used to switch the menu from appearing horizontally at the top of the page, to a vertical format on the left side (or right side, in right-to-left languages). When viewed vertically, the menu becomes an interactive tree.

The screenshot shows a web-based application interface. At the top, there is a horizontal toolbar with two main buttons: 'Manage' on the left and 'Shortcuts' on the right. Below this toolbar, the page content is organized into a vertical menu structure. The menu items are listed with their corresponding icons:

- Content** (document icon)
- Structure** (person icon)
- Appearance** (magnifying glass icon)
- Extend** (puzzle piece icon)
- Configuration** (key icon)
- People** (two people icon)
- Reports** (bar chart icon)

Below the menu items, there are several additional links and messages:

- Available updates**
- Recent log messages**
- Available translation updates**
- Field list**
- Status report**

At the very bottom of the visible area, there is a small message: **Top 'access denied'**.

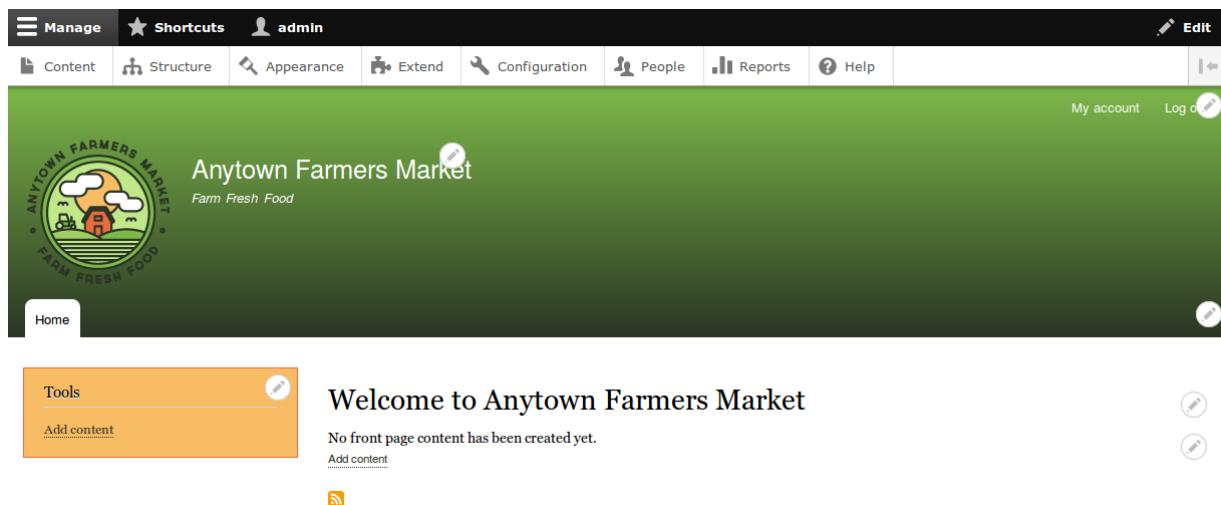
This guide has a standard way to describe navigation to administrative pages using the administrative toolbar. See [##### i.5, "##### #### #####"](#) for more information.

## What are contextual links?

Some administrative and editing functionality on the site can be accessed through the *contextual links* displayed by the core Contextual Links module. Contextual links take you to some of the same pages that you can access through the administrative menu, but instead of having to navigate through the menu hierarchy, these links are provided near where the related content is displayed on your site.

Contextual links have to be activated to be visible. If your site's theme uses the default styling for contextual links, a pencil icon is used to indicate that contextual links are present and activated, and if you click the icon, you will see the contextual links. There are two ways to activate the pencil icons that provide access to the contextual links:

- If you are using a mouse in a browser, the icon will temporarily appear when you hover over an area that has related contextual links.
- You can click the master pencil icon (or its *Edit* link) at the right end of the top bar in the toolbar, which will activate all of the contextual links on the current page. This icon is only visible on pages with contextual links.



## Attributions

Written by [Scott Wilkinson](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 4.2. Editing Basic Site Information

### Goal

Change basic site information such as *Site name*, *Slogan*, *Default time zone*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

### Steps

#### Configuring the basic site information

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings* (*admin/config/system/site-information*) to change the *Site name*, *Slogan*, administrative *Email address*, or the *Default front page* path.
2. Fill in the available fields as appropriate for your site.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Site name	Used to identify the site and displayed in browsers	Anytown Farmers Market
Slogan	Usually displayed sitewide	Farm Fresh Food
Email address	Used as <i>From</i> address in automated email messages (registrations, password resets, etc)	<a href="mailto:info@example.com">info@example.com</a>

▼ SITE DETAILS

**Site name \***  
Anytown Farmers Market

**Slogan**  
Farm Fresh Food  
How this is used depends on your site's theme.

**Email address \***  
[info@example.com](mailto:info@example.com)

The *From* address in automated emails sent during registration and new password requests, and other notifications. (Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent this email being flagged as spam.)

3. After editing the fields, click *Save configuration* to see the changes applied to the site.

## Configuring default Regional settings

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Regional settings* ([admin/config/regional/settings](#)).
2. Select the appropriate country from the *Default country* select list in the *Locale* section, and set which day will be displayed as *First day of week* on your site.
3. In the *Time zones* section, select the sitewide *Default time zone* from the list and configure user-specific time zones.

The screenshot shows the 'Regional settings' configuration page. It is divided into two main sections: 'LOCALE' and 'TIME ZONES'.

**LOCALE:**

- Default country:** United States
- First day of week:** Sunday

**TIME ZONES:**

- Default time zone:** America/Los Angeles
- Users may set their own time zone:**
- Remind users at login if their time zone is not set:**   
Only applied if users may set their own time zone.
- Time zone for new users:**
  - Default time zone
  - Empty time zone
  - Users may set their own time zone at registration  
Only applied if users may set their own time zone.

**Save configuration**

4. After editing the fields, click *Save configuration* to see the changes applied to the site.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Getting started with Drupal 8 administration"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#), [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#), and [Antje Lorch](#).

## 4.3. Installing a Module

### Goal

Install a core module, or a contributed module whose files have already been uploaded to the site, through the administrative interface or using Drush.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[\*\*#### 1.2, #####: #####\*\*](#)

### Site prerequisites

If you want to use Drush to install modules, Drush must be installed. See [\*\*#### 3.2, #####: #####\*\*](#).

### Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install modules.

#### Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend (admin/modules)*. The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Check the boxes for the module or modules you want to install. For example, check the box for the core Activity Tracker module.

CORE	
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Actions</b>	▶ Perform tasks on specific events triggered within the system.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Activity Tracker</b>	▶ Enables tracking of recent content for users.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Aggregator</b>	▶ Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds) from external sources.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Automated Cron</b>	▶ Provides an automated way to run cron jobs, by executing them at the end of a server response.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Ban</b>	▶ Enables banning of IP addresses.

3. Click *Install*. The checked modules will be installed.

## Using Drush

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend (admin/modules)*. The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Find the machine name of the module you want to install, by expanding the information area for the module. For instance, the core Activity Tracker module's machine name is *tracker*.
3. Run the following Drush command to install the module:  
`drush en tracker`

## Expand your understanding

If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Additional resources

[Drush](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 4.4. Uninstalling Unused Modules

### Goal

Uninstall the core Search and History modules, as well as the core Activity Tracker module if you installed it in [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#), to reduce overhead.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.2, #####: #####](#)

## Site prerequisites

- You must have at least one unused module on your site that you want to uninstall, such as the core Search module.
- If you want to use Drush to uninstall modules, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####: #####"](#).

## Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to uninstall modules.

### Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend > Uninstall* (*admin/modules/uninstall*) where you will find the list of modules that are ready to be uninstalled.
2. Check the boxes for the modules you are uninstalling (*Search, History, and Activity Tracker*). Click *Uninstall* at the bottom of the page.

UNINSTALL	NAME	DESCRIPTION
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>Activity Tracker</b>	Enables tracking of recent content for users.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Automated Cron</b>	Provides an automated way to run cron jobs, by executing them at the end of a server response.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Block</b>	Controls the visual building blocks a page is constructed with. Blocks are boxes of content rendered into an area, or region, of a web page. The following reason prevents Block from being uninstalled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Required by: Custom Block</li></ul>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Breakpoint</b>	Manage breakpoints and breakpoint groups for responsive designs. The following reason prevents Breakpoint from being uninstalled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Required by: Toolbar</li></ul>

### تشادی

You cannot uninstall a module if it is required by some other module(s) and/or functionality. For example, the core File module is required by the core Text Editor, CKEditor, and Image modules. It can't be uninstalled unless you uninstall its dependent module(s) and functionality first. A module that cannot be uninstalled yet will have a disabled checkbox, restricting you from uninstalling it.

3. Step 2 will prompt you to confirm the module uninstall request. Click *Uninstall*.

## Confirm uninstall ★

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Extend](#) » [Uninstall](#)

The following modules will be completely uninstalled from your site, and *all data from these modules will be lost!*

- Activity Tracker
- History
- Search

### ▼ CONFIGURATION DELETIONS

The listed configuration will be deleted.

#### Block

- Search

#### Search page

- Content
- Users

Would you like to continue with uninstalling the above?

[Uninstall](#)

[Cancel](#)

## Using Drush

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend (admin/modules)*. The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Find the machine name of the module you want to uninstall, by expanding the information area for the module. For instance, the core Activity Tracker module's machine name is *tracker*.
3. Run the following Drush command to uninstall the module:  
`drush pm-uninstall tracker`

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### #### #####"](#)

- [\*\*#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"\*\*](#)
- You can also uninstall the core Comment module by following these steps, but only after comment fields have been removed, which is a side effect of [\*\*#### 6.2, "Deleting a Content Type"\*\*](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 4.5. Configuring User Account Settings

### Goal

Turn off the ability for people to register user accounts on the site. Also, review and/or edit the email messages generated by the site for events related to user accounts.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[\*\*#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"\*\*](#)

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > People > Account settings* ([admin/config/people/accounts](#)).
2. Under *Registration and cancellation*, select *Administrators only* as the people with permissions to register user accounts. You can check *Require email verification when a visitor creates an account* in case you want to change the settings for account registration later on.

#### ▼ REGISTRATION AND CANCELLATION

##### **Who can register accounts?**

- Administrators only
- Visitors
- Visitors, but administrator approval is required

##### Require email verification when a visitor creates an account

New users will be required to validate their email address prior to logging into the site, and will be assigned a system-generated password. With this setting disabled, users will be logged in immediately upon registering, and may select their own passwords during registration.

##### Enable password strength indicator

##### **When cancelling a user account**

- Disable the account and keep its content.
- Disable the account and unpublish its content.
- Delete the account and make its content belong to the *Anonymous* user.

Users with the *Select method for cancelling account* or *Administer users permissions* can override this default method.

3. Optionally, change the default email address from which user account notifications from the farmers market website will be sent. This will help you maintain a separate email address from the one used for the website in general. For example, this email address for user account notifications will be useful for a staff member(s) communicating with vendors.

##### **Notification email address**

The email address to be used as the 'from' address for all account notifications listed below. If 'Visitors, but administrator approval is required' is selected above, a notification email will also be sent to this address for any new registrations. Leave empty to use the default system email address ([info@example.com](mailto:info@example.com)).

4. Optionally, edit the email templates in the *Emails* section to customize automated emails.

There are seven email templates available with the core. They are meant for different user-specific occasions. All of them can be personalized and three can be disabled via checkboxes: activation, blocking, and cancellation.

You can send out your own text (for example, welcoming the new vendors for whom accounts were just created) by editing the the *Welcome (new user created by administrator)* template.

**Emails**

**Welcome (new user created by administrator)**

**Welcome (awaiting approval)**

**Admin (user awaiting approval)**

**Welcome (no approval required)**

**Account activation**

**Account blocked**

**Account cancellation confirmation**

**Account canceled**

**Password recovery**

**WELCOME (NEW USER CREATED BY ADMINISTRATOR)**

Edit the welcome email messages sent to new member accounts created by an administrator. Available variables are: [site:name], [site:url], [user:display-name], [user:account-name], [user:mail], [site:login-url], [site:url-brief], [user:edit-url], [user:one-time-login-url], [user:cancel-url].

**Subject**

An administrator created an account for you at [site:name]

**Body**

[user:display-name],  
A site administrator at [site:name] has created an account for you. You may now log in by clicking this link or copying and pasting it into your browser:  
[user:one-time-login-url]  
This link can only be used once to log in and will lead you to a page where you can set your password.  
After setting your password, you will be able to log in at [site:login-url] in the future using:  
username: [user:name]  
password: Your password  
-- [site:name] team

5. Click *Save configuration* to save the changes.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)
- [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#)

## Related concepts

See [### 7, ##### ##### #####](#) for more information about user accounts and permissions.

## Additional resources

[Security Guide](#) can help you with a more safety-focused approach to configuration.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 4.6. Configuring the Theme

### Goal

Edit the settings of the default core Bartik theme to change the color scheme and to add a logo.

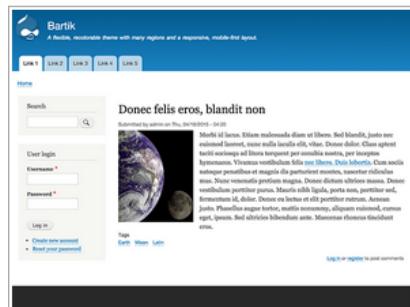
### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.3, #####: #####](#)

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*.
2. Under *Installed themes*, you will find Bartik listed as your default theme. Under *Bartik (default theme)*, click *Settings*.

#### Installed themes



#### Bartik 8.2.0-dev (default theme)

A flexible, recolorable theme with many regions and a responsive, mobile-first layout.

#### Settings

3. Under *Color scheme*, click inside each color build box and type the proper color codes you would like to add. For example, use the following colors:

Area	Color
Header background top	#7db84a (green)
Header background bottom	#2a3524 (dark green)
Main background	#ffffff (white)
Sidebar background	#f8bc65 (light orange)
Sidebar borders	#e96b3c (orange)
Footer background	#2a3524 (dark green)
Title and slogan	#ffffff (white)

Area	Color
Text color	#000000 (black)
Link color	#2a3524 (dark green)

Note: You can also use the color wheel on the right to select colors of your choice. The web color codes will be added for you.

▼ COLOR SCHEME

Color set	Custom	▼
Header background top		#7db84a
Header background bottom		#2a3524
Main background		#ffffff
Sidebar background		#f8bc65
Sidebar borders		#e96b3c
Footer background		#2a3524
Title and slogan		#ffffff
Text color		#000000
Link color		#2a3524

4. Under *Logo image*, uncheck *Use the logo supplied by the theme*.

▼ LOGO IMAGE SETTINGS

Use the default logo supplied by the theme

**Path to custom logo**  

Examples: logo.svg (for a file in the public filesystem), public://logo.svg, or core/themes/bartik/logo.svg.

**Upload logo image**  
 No file selected.

If you don't have direct file access to the server, use this field to upload your logo.

5. Under *Upload logo image*, locate a logo file and upload it to your site. Note: You can also set a universal logo for all themes under *Appearance > Settings (admin/appearance/settings)*. A custom logo for your theme will override the universal logo.

Once you have selected the file you would like to upload, you will see its filename next to the *Choose File* or *Browse* button in your browser.

6. In order to save your changes and see the updated colors and logo on your site, click *Save configuration* at the bottom of the page.

Note: Under *Color scheme*, there is a *Preview* section that displays a sample of how your website will look with the new settings.



### **Etiam est risus**

Maecenas id porttitor Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud felis. Laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea.

### **Lorem ipsum dolor**

Sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit, sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Maecenas id porttitor Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud felis.

### **ETIAM EST RISUS**

Maecenas id porttitor Ut enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud felis. Laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea.

### **ERISUS DOLOR**

Donec placerat

Nullam nibh dolor

Blandit sed

Fermentum id

7. Click *Return to site* or *Home* in the toolbar to verify that you have updated the core Bartik theme settings for your website.



## Expand your understanding

- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)
- [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#)
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Ann Greazel](#), [Amanda Luker](#) at [Advomatic](#), and [Jack Haas](#).

---

# هداس هحفص تىرىدم .5 لصف

## 5.1. Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs

### What is a URL?

URL is the abbreviation for "Uniform Resource Locator", which is the page's address on the web. It is the "name" by which a browser identifies a page to display. In the example "Visit us at *example.com*.", *example.com* is the URL for the home page of your website. Users use URLs to locate content on the web.

### What is a Path?

A path is the unique, last part of the URL for a specific function or piece of content. For example, for a page whose full URL is *http://example.com/node/7*, the path is *node/7*.

Here are some examples of paths you might find in your site:

- *node/7*
- *taxonomy/term/6*
- *admin/content/comment*
- *user/login*
- *user/3*

### What is an Alias?

The core software has a feature called "URL Alias" that allows you to provide a more understandable name to the content. So, if you have an "About Us" page with the path *node/7*, you can set up an alias so that your visitors will see it as *http://www.example.com/AboutUs*. The core Path module, which supports URL aliasing, provides this functionality.

### Related topics

- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

## Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#) from "[URL aliases](#)", and "[Understanding Drupal paths](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 5.2. Creating a Content Item

### Goal

Create and publish a content item that will be used as the home page of the site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The *Basic page* content type must exist. This is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Basic page (node/add/page)*. The *Create Basic page* form appears.
2. Click *Edit summary*.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Title	Title of the page. Will also be used as a meta tag in the source code, URL alias, and as label of the content item in administration screens	Home
Summary	Summary of the value of the body field. Can be used as teaser in overview pages	Opening times and location of City Market.
Body	Full content of the page	Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!

Field name	Explanation	Value
		9 2 Open: Sundays, AM to PM, April to September
URL path settings > URL alias	Alternate relative path for the content	/home Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

By clicking the *Source* button in the rich text editor toolbar, you can see the HTML source code of the text that you are editing.

**Create Basic page ☆**

Home » Add content

**Title \***  
Home

**Summary (Hide summary)**  
Opening times and location of City Market

Leave blank to use trimmed value of full text as the summary.

**Body**

**Text format** Basic HTML

**Last saved:** Not saved yet  
**Author:** admin  
 Create new revision  
**Revision log message**

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

**MENU SETTINGS**

**URL PATH SETTINGS**

**URL alias** /home  
Specify an alternative path by which this data can be accessed. For example, type "/about" when writing an about page.

**AUTHORIZING INFORMATION**

**PROMOTION OPTIONS**

**Save and publish** **Preview**

4. Click *Preview* to ensure everything looks like expected.
5. Click *Back to content editing*.
6. Click *Save and publish*. The content is saved and can be found on the *Content* page.
7. Follow the same steps to create an About page, with title "About", and a body telling about the history of the farmer's market.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 5.5, "Designating a Front Page for your Site"](#)

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

## Related concepts

- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)
- [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "About nodes"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Agnes Kiss](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 5.3. Editing a Content Item

### Goal

Update the hours on the Home page content item.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)

### Site prerequisites

A content item for the Home page must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (`admin/content`).

2. If the content item you want to edit was updated or created recently, it should appear near the top of the content list on that page. If not, you can use the *Content type*, *Title*, or other filters to locate the content item.

The screenshot shows a search interface for content items. At the top, there are dropdown menus for 'Published status' (Any), 'Content type' (Any), 'Title' (empty), and 'Language' (Any). Below these are buttons for 'Filter', 'With selection' (Delete content), and 'Apply'. A link 'Hide lower priority columns' is visible. The main area is a table with columns: TITLE, CONTENT TYPE, AUTHOR, STATUS, UPDATED, and OPERATIONS. Two rows are shown:

TITLE	CONTENT TYPE	AUTHOR	STATUS	UPDATED	OPERATIONS
About	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 15:55	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Home	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 15:55	<a href="#">Edit</a>

At the bottom left is an 'Apply' button.

3. Click *Edit* in the row of the content item you want to edit (Home), to open the content editing form. Update the opening hours in the *Body* field. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#) for an explanation of the fields and a screenshot.
4. Check *Create new revision* in the box on the right, if it is not already checked, and enter a *Revision log message* explaining what changes you are making (for example, you might enter "Updated opening hours"). This text will appear in the revision log for the page.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit' form for a content item. It includes the following sections:

- Published**: Shows the last save date (07/06/2016 - 15:55) and author (admin).
- Create new revision**: A checked checkbox.
- Revision log message**: A text area containing the text "Updated opening hours".
- Briefly describe the changes you have made.**: A placeholder text at the bottom of the form.

5. Click *Save and keep published* to save your changes.
6. You will be redirected back to the *Content* administrative page, and there should be a message showing that the content item was updated.

✓ Basic page *Home* has been updated.

## Expand your understanding

As an alternative to the first two steps above, you can also reach the content edit form as follows:

1. Starting from your site's home page, use the site's navigation menus to locate the page where the content you want to edit is displayed to visitors.
2. Most themes will display an *Edit* link or tab near the top of that page to people with permission to edit the page; clicking the link will take you to the full content edit form.
3. You could also use the in-place editor (refer to [#### 5.4, "Editing with the In-Place Editor"](#) ) from this page.

### Attributions

Written by [Chris Dart](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 5.4. Editing with the In-Place Editor

### Goal

Use the in-place editor to add information to the About page without opening the full editor page.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

- #### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"

## Site prerequisites

The About page you want to edit must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

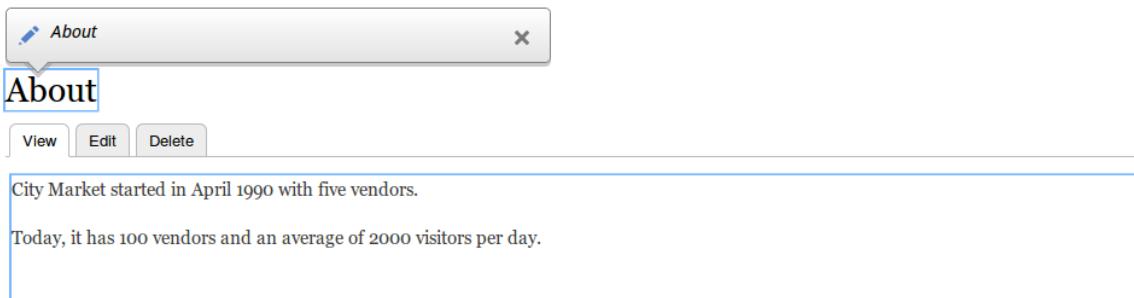
## Steps

Navigate to the About page to edit content with the in-place editor. If the page has not yet been added to a navigation menu, you can find and open it by following these steps:

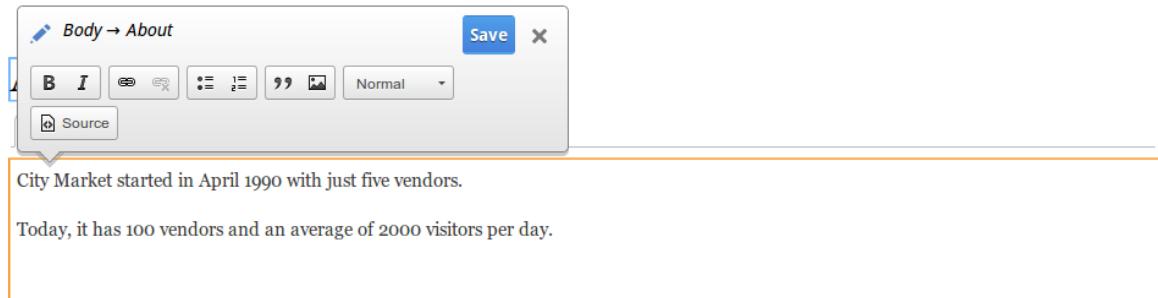
1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).
2. If the content item you want to edit was updated or created recently, it should appear near the top of the content list on that page. If not, you can use *Type*, *Title*, or other filters to locate the content item.
3. Find the About page and click it.

Once the content you want to edit is being viewed in your browser, follow these steps to use the quick editor:

1. Find the section of the page that displays the content you want to edit, and turn on quick editing mode using the *Quick edit* contextual link (see [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for instructions on how to access contextual links). You will see each editable field on this content item outlined in blue; also, a hovering dialog box will appear.



2. Click the *Body* text area to begin editing. The *Body* field supports a rich text editor. The editing toolbar will be displayed in a hovering dialog box.
3. Add some information about City Market. A *Save* button will appear in the hovering dialog box, and the field outline will change color.



4. If you are satisfied with your edits, click *Save* in the hovering dialog box. If not, click "x" to discard your edits, and confirm. Either way, quick editing mode will be turned off.

## Expand your understanding

Try using the full editor on the same content (see [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)) and note that there is much more information that can be edited that is not available in the quick editor.

### Attributions

Written and edited by [David Lee](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 5.5. Designating a Front Page for your Site

### Goal

Configure which content item is displayed as the front page of your website.

### Site prerequisites

The content item that you want to designate as the front page of your site must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings* ([admin/config/system/site-information](#)).

2. Under *Front page*, replace */node* with the name of the page you would like to make the home page. To use the home page that was previously created, provide its path */home*. Click *Save configuration*.

▼ FRONT PAGE

**Default front page**  
http://example.com /home

Optionally, specify a relative URL to display as the front page. Leave blank to display the default front page.

3. Navigate to the home page to verify that it displays content as configured by you.



## Expand your understanding

- [\*\*#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"\*\*](#)
- Follow [\*\*#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"\*\*](#) to create an error page to be used as a 404 (page not found) or <sup>403</sup> (not authorized) response on your site. Then following the steps here, you can designate it as the error response, in the *Error pages* section of the configuration.

## Related concepts

[\*\*#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"\*\*](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Ann Greazel](#), [Jack Haas](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 5.6. Concept: Menu

### What is a menu?

Menus are a collection of links (menu items) used to navigate a website. The core Menu UI module provides an interface to control and customize the menu system. Menus are primarily displayed as a hierarchical list of links. By default, new menu items are placed inside a built-in menu labeled *Main navigation*, but administrators can also create custom menus.

The core Standard installation profile contains five menus:

#### Main navigation

Links to sections intended for site visitors. They are usually created by site administrators.

#### Administration

Links to administrative tasks. This menu mainly contains links supplied by modules on your site.

#### User account menu

Links to tasks associated with the user account such as *My account* and *Log out*.

#### Footer

Links to important pages within the site intended for the footer. They are usually created by site administrators.

#### Tools

Links to tasks necessary for site visitors. Some modules feature their links here.

You can customize menus in the following ways, using the menu administration functionality:

- Creating new custom menus.
- Adding new menu items.
- Reordering menu items by setting their "weight" or by dragging them into place.
- Renaming menu items.
- Changing the link title (the tooltip that appears when you mouse over a menu item).
- Moving a menu item into a different menu by editing its *Parent* property.

A menu item will only be shown to a visitor if they have the rights to view the page it links to. For example, the admin menu item is not shown to visitors who are not logged in.

### Related topics

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#)

- To display a menu, you will need to place the block that corresponds to the menu in a region of your theme; see [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#), [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### # # # # #"](#), and [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#). The core Standard installation profile places all of the menus it defines except Administration in regions of the core Bartik theme. The core Toolbar module, which is installed by the core Standard installation profile, displays the Administration menu; it is also displayed by the contributed Admin Toolbar module.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Ajay Viswambharan](#), [Joy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 5.7. Adding a Page to the Navigation

### Goal

Add a page to the navigation. For example, the About page.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The About page content item must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

### Steps

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (`admin/content`).
- Find the About page, and click *Edit* in that row. The content editing form appears.

<input type="checkbox"/>	TITLE	CONTENT TYPE	AUTHOR	STATUS	UPDATED	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	Home	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 12:52	<button>Edit</button> <span>▼</span>
<input type="checkbox"/>	About	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 12:52	<span style="outline: 2px solid red;">Edit</span> <span>▼</span>

3. Click *Menu settings* on the right to expand it.
4. Check *Provide a menu link* for the menu options to appear.
5. Enter values from the table below:

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Menu link title	Title that will be displayed in the menu	About
Description	Text that will be displayed when a visitor hovers over the link	History of the market
Parent item	Location of the page in the menu hierarchy. For example, if you choose < <i>Main navigation</i> >, the page will appear in the highest level of the navigation. By choosing another menu item as parent, you can create a menu hierarchy of multiple levels.	<Main navigation>
Weight	The order in which the page should appear in the menu (lower-weighted menu items will be shown before higher-weighted menu items)	-2

**MENU SETTINGS (ABOUT)**

Provide a menu link

**Menu link title**

About

**Description**

History of the market

Shown when hovering over the menu link.

**Parent item**

<Main navigation>

**Weight**

-2

Menu links with lower weights are displayed before links with higher weights.

- Click *Save and keep published* to save the changes. Click *Home* or *Return to site* in the navigation bar to see the result, which could look like the picture below.

The screenshot shows the website for Anytown Farmers Market. At the top right, there are links for "My account" and "Log out". The main header features a circular logo with a farm scene and the text "ANYTOWN FARMERS MARKET" and "FARM FRESH FOOD". Below the header, the page title is "Anytown Farmers Market" with the subtitle "Farm Fresh Food". The navigation bar at the bottom includes links for "About" and "Home". On the left side, there is a sidebar with "Tools" and "Add content" buttons, and a "View" button. The main content area is titled "Home" and contains the text: "Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!", "Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September", and "Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown".

## Expand your understanding

[#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with menus"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from ["Working with Menus"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#); edited by [Jack Haas](#).

## 5.8. Changing the Order of Navigation

### Goal

Reorder the items in a menu.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)
- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)

### Site prerequisites

Home and About pages must exist in the main navigation menu. See [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Menus* ([admin/structure/menu](#)) where all menus on your site are listed. Click *Edit Menu* from the *Operations* dropdown for *Main navigation*. You can also reach this page using contextual links (refer to [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)) for the menu.

TITLE	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
Administration	Administrative task links	<a href="#">Edit menu</a> ▾
Footer	Site information links	<a href="#">Edit menu</a> ▾
Main navigation	Site section links	<a href="#">Edit menu</a> ▾
Tools	User tool links, often added by modules	<a href="#">Edit menu</a> ▾
User account menu	Links related to the active user account	<a href="#">Edit menu</a> ▾

2. The *Edit menu* page will display a list of each item in the menu you chose (*Main navigation*).

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
✚ About	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> ▾
✚ Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>

**Save**

3. Use the cross bar handles to reorder the menu items. Drag the Home menu item above the About menu item so that it appears first.

**⚠ \*You have unsaved changes.**

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
✚ Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
✚ About	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a> ▾

**Save**

4. Click *Save*.
5. The home page now displays the main navigation with the Home menu item displayed first.



## Expand your understanding

Add a menu item called *Contact*, leading to the `/contact` page, to your Main navigation menu.

The contact page is provided by the core Contact module; you may want to edit its layout and fields (see [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)).

## Related concepts

[#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Ann Greazel](#).

---

# یاوت حم رات خاں می ظن ت 6 لصف

## 6.1. Adding a Content Type

### Goal

Add and configure a new content type Vendor.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

You need to have a plan in place for your content structure. See [#### 2.5, "##### ##### ##### ##### ##### #####"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). The *Content types* page appears showing all the available types of content.
2. Click *Add content type*. The *Add content type* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Name	Name of the content type	Vendor
Description	Explain the use of the content type	Information about a vendor

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#)

Individual content types can have different fields, behaviors, and permissions assigned to them.

**Name \***

Vendor

Machine name: vendor [[Edit](#)]

The human-readable name of this content type. This text will be displayed as part of the list on the *Add content* page. This name must be unique.

**Description**

Information about a vendor

This text will be displayed on the *Add new content* page.

3. In the vertical tab *Submission form settings*, configure the form that is used for creating and editing content of this type. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Title field label	Label of the Title field that is shown when editing or creating content of this type.	Vendor name
Preview before submitting	Option to choose whether you should preview the content before submitting.	Optional
Explanation or submission guidelines	Instructions for creating or editing content.	(Leave blank)

4. In the vertical tab *Publishing options*, decide on default options for new content of this type. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Published	Make the content item published by default.	Checked
Promoted to front page	In a default website, this setting can be used to show content on the homepage.	Unchecked
Sticky at top of lists	In a default website, this setting can be used to keep content on top of a list.	Unchecked
Create new revision	Create a new revision each time the vendor is being edited.	Checked

Changing these settings does not affect the content items that have already been created.

<b>Submission form settings</b>	
Vendor name	
<b>Publishing options</b>	
Published , Create new revision	
<b>Display settings</b>	
Don't display post information	
<b>Menu settings</b>	
<b>Default options</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published <input type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page <input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create new revision <small>Users with the <i>Administer content</i> permission will be able to override these options.</small>	

5. In the vertical tab *Display settings*, decide if the author and publication date will be visible in the content item. Fill in the fields as shown below.

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Display author and date information	Display the author username and publication date on each vendor page.	Unchecked

<b>Submission form settings</b>	
Vendor name	
<b>Publishing options</b>	
Published , Create new revision	
<b>Display settings</b>	
Don't display post information	
<b>Menu settings</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Display author and date information Author username and publish date will be displayed.	

6. In the vertical tab *Menu settings*, fill in the fields as shown below.

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Available menus	Menus that this type of content can be added to. Vendors do not need to appear in menus, so uncheck all menu options.	Unchecked

**Submission form settings**  
Vendor name

**Publishing options**  
Published , Create new revision

**Display settings**  
Don't display post information

**Menu settings**

**Available menus**

- Administration
- Footer
- Main navigation
- Tools
- User account menu

The menus available to place links in for this content type.

- Click *Save and manage fields* to save the content type. The *Manage fields* page appears that allows you to add fields to the content type. See [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

**Manage fields** ☆

Edit    Manage fields    Manage form display    Manage display

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor

✓ The content type *Vendor* has been added.

+ Add field

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">▼</a>

- Follow the same steps to create a content type for recipes. Example values for the fields in the forms, where they are different from the steps above:

Field name	Example value
Name	Recipe
Description	A recipe submitted by a vendor
Submission form settings - Title	Recipe name

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

- Install and configure the [\*contributed Pathauto module\*](#) so that content items get automatically generated URLs/path aliases. See [\*\*#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"\*\*](#) for more on URLs within your site, [\*\*#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"\*\*](#) for instructions on finding contributed modules, and [\*\*#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"\*\*](#) for instructions on downloading and installing contributed modules.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [\*Sree Veturi\*](#), [\*Boris Doesborg\*](#), and [\*Jennifer Hodgdon\*](#).

## 6.2. Deleting a Content Type

### Goal

Delete the unneeded content type *Article*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[\*\*#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"\*\*](#)

### Site prerequisites

The *Article* content type must exist. It is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). The *Content types* page appears.
2. Click *Delete* in the *Operations* dropdown button for the *Article* content type.

NAME	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
Article	Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.	<a href="#">Manage fields</a>
Basic page	Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	<a href="#">Manage form display</a>
Recipe	Recipe submitted by a vendor	<a href="#">Manage display</a>
Vendor	Information about a vendor	<a href="#">Edit</a>

3. A confirmation page is displayed. Click *Delete*.

**Are you sure you want to delete the content type Article?**

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Article

This action cannot be undone.

**▼ CONFIGURATION DELETIONS**

The listed configuration will be deleted.

**Entity form display**

- node.article.default

**Entity view display**

- node.article.default
- node.article.rss
- node.article.teaser

**Field**

- Body
- Comments
- Image
- Tags

**RDF mapping**

- node.article

**Delete**   **Cancel**

4. The *Content types* page appears with a confirmation message saying that the content type has been deleted:

The content type Article has been deleted.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 6.3. Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type

### Goal

Add a link field and an image field to the Vendor content type.

### Prerequisite knowledge

#### 2.3, #####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####

### Site prerequisites

The Vendor content type must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

### Steps

Add the fields Vendor URL and Main image to the Vendor content type.

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). Then click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the Vendor content type. The *Manage fields* page appears.
2. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. You can either create a new field for the content type or re-use an existing field.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Field type	Link
Label	Label that is visible in administration pages	Vendor URL

A machine name is automatically generated, based on the *Label* value. Click *Edit* if you want to override the default name.

**Add field** ☆

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor » Manage fields

**Add a new field**

Link ▾

**Label\***

Vendor URL Machine name: field\_vendor\_url [Edit]

**Save and continue**

4. Click *Save and continue*. The page *Vendor URL* appears which lets you set the allowed number of values. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Allowed number of values	The number of values that can be entered	Limited, 1

5. Click *Save field settings*. The page *Vendor URL settings for Basic page* appears which allows you to configure the field. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Label	Label that is visible in the content form	Vendor URL
Help text	The instruction that is shown below the field	(leave blank)
Required field	Whether the field is required or not	Unchecked
Allowed link type	The kind of links that can be entered	External links only
Allow link text	Whether a link text can be entered	Disabled

**Vendor URL settings for Vendor ☆**

[Edit](#) [Field settings](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor » Manage fields

**Label\***  
Vendor URL

**Help text**

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.  
 Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
 This field supports tokens.

Required field

**DEFAULT VALUE**  
 The default value for this field, used when creating new content.  
**Vendor URL**  
 This must be an external URL such as <http://example.com>.

**Allowed link type**  
 Internal links only  
 External links only  
 Both internal and external links

**Allow link text**  
 Disabled  
 Optional  
 Required

6. Click *Save settings*. The Vendor URL has been added to the content type. Continue creating the Main image field.
7. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Field type	Image
Label	Label that is visible in administration pages	Main image

8. Click *Save and continue*. The page Main image appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Allowed number of values	The number of values that can be entered	Limited, <sup>1</sup>

You can set a default image here. This will be used when you do not provide an image when creating a Vendor content item.

9. Click *Save field settings*. The page *Main image settings for Basic page* appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Value</b>
Label	Label that is visible in the content form	Main image
Help text	The instruction that is shown below the field	(leave blank)
Required field	Whether the field is required or not	Checked
Allowed file extensions	The type of images that can be uploaded	png, gif, jpg, jpeg
File directory	The directory where the files will be stored. By providing a file directory value, you ensure that all images uploaded via the Main image field will be located in the same directory.	vendors
Minimum image resolution	The minimum resolution of the uploaded image	600 x 600
Maximum upload size	The maximum file size of the uploaded image	5 MB
Enable Alt field	Whether an alternative text can be entered	Checked
Alt field required	Whether an alternative text is required	Checked

**Main image settings for Vendor ☆**

[Edit](#) [Field settings](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor » Manage fields

**Label\***  
Main image

**Help text**

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.  
 Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
 This field supports tokens.

Required field

**DEFAULT IMAGE**  
 If no image is uploaded, this image will be shown on display and will override the field's default image.

**Image**  
 No file selected.

Image to be shown if no image is uploaded.

**Alternative text**

This text will be used by screen readers, search engines, and when the image cannot be loaded.

**Title**

The title attribute is used as a tooltip when the mouse hovers over the image.

**Allowed file extensions \***  
 png, gif, jpg, jpeg

Separate extensions with a space or comma and do not include the leading dot.

**File directory**  
 vendors

10. Click *Save settings*. Main image has been added to the content type.

**Manage fields ☆**

[Edit](#) [Manage fields](#) [Manage form display](#) [Manage display](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor

✓ Saved Main image configuration.

[+ Add field](#)

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	<a href="#">Edit</a> ▾
Main image	field_main_image	Image	<a href="#">Edit</a> ▾
Vendor URL	field_vendor_url	Link	<a href="#">Edit</a> ▾

11. Add a Main image field to the Recipe content type, using similar steps. Start by navigating to the Recipe content type's *Manage Fields* page in step 1. Then skip to step 7 and follow the remaining steps, but reuse the existing Main image field you created for the Vendor content type rather than creating a new field. In subsequent steps, some of the configuration screens will not be available, because of the field reuse.

12. Create two Vendor content items (see [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)) called "Happy Farm" and "Sweet Honey". Make sure that they include images and URLs.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Add a field to a content type"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Sree Veturi](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 6.4. Concept: Reference Fields

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### ####"](#)

### What is a reference field?

A *reference field* is a field that represents a relationship between an entity and one or more other entities, which may belong to the same or different entity type. The three most commonly-used reference fields are:

#### Content reference

A reference to a content item. For example, you might want to connect recipes to the vendors who submitted them. You would set up a content reference field called Submitted by referencing Vendor content items on the Recipe content type.

#### Taxonomy term reference

A reference to a taxonomy term. For example, you might want to connect recipes to their ingredients. You would set up a taxonomy term reference field called Ingredients on the Recipe content type. This reference field will point to the vocabulary Ingredients.

### User reference

A reference to a user account. For example, you might want to connect recipes with their chefs. You would set up a user reference field called Chefs on the Recipe content type.

## Related topics

[#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 6.5. Concept: Taxonomy

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)

### What is Taxonomy?

*Taxonomy* is used to classify website content. One common example of taxonomy is the tags used to classify or categorize posts in a blog website; the farmers market website could use an ingredients taxonomy to classify recipes. Individual taxonomy items are known as *terms* (the blog tags or recipe ingredients in these examples); and a set of terms is known as a *vocabulary* (the set of all blog post tags, or the set of all recipe ingredients in these examples). Technically, taxonomy terms are an entity type and the entity subtypes are the vocabularies. Like other entities, taxonomy terms can have fields attached; for instance, you could set up an image field to contain an icon for each term.

An individual vocabulary can organize its terms in a hierarchy, or it could be flat. For example, blog tags normally have a flat structure, while a recipe ingredients vocabulary could be hierarchical (for example, tomatoes could be a sub-term of vegetables, and under tomatoes, you could have green and red tomatoes).

Taxonomy terms are normally attached as reference fields to other content entities, which is how you can use them to classify content. When you set up a taxonomy reference field, you can let users enter terms in two ways:

### Free tagging

New terms can be created right on the content editing form.

### Fixed list of terms

The list of terms is curated and managed outside the content editing form, and users can only choose from the existing list when editing content.

Taxonomy reference fields can be added to any entity, such as user accounts, custom blocks, or regular content items. If you use them to classify regular content items, your site will automatically be set up with taxonomy listing pages for each term; each of these pages lists all of the content items that are classified with that term. For example, if you created several recipes that all had carrots as an ingredient, you might see something like this on the Carrots taxonomy listing page:

## Carrots

### Fresh Carrots

[Read more](#)

Serve multi-colored carrots on a plate for dinner.

---

### Green Salad

[Read more](#)

Chop up your favorite vegetables and put them in a bowl.

---

## Related topics

- [6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#).
- The listing pages are views, which are covered in [9, ##### ##### ## ####### ##](#)  
[Views](#).

## Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) from ["Organizing content with taxonomies"](#) and ["About taxonomies"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 6.6. Setting Up a Taxonomy

### Goal

Create an Ingredients vocabulary and add it to the Recipe content type as a field that can contain an unlimited number of values and that allows adding new terms to the vocabulary.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"
- #### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"
- #### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"

### Site prerequisites

The Recipe content type must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Taxonomy* (*admin/structure/taxonomy*). You will see the *Tags* vocabulary that was created with the core Standard installation profile.

2. Click *Add vocabulary*, and fill in the values below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Name	The name of the vocabulary	Ingredients

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Description	A brief note about the vocabulary	(Leave blank)

## Add vocabulary

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#)

**Name \***

Ingredients

**Description**

**Save**

- Click **Save**. You will be taken to the *Ingredients* page, which shows a list of all the terms in this vocabulary.

## Ingredients

[List](#)

[Edit](#)

[Manage fields](#)

[Manage form display](#)

[Manage display](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#) » [Ingredients](#)

 Created new vocabulary *Ingredients*.

You can reorganize the terms in *Ingredients* using their drag-and-drop handles, and group terms under a parent term by sliding them under and to the right of the parent.

**+ Add term**

[Show row weights](#)

NAME	WEIGHT	OPERATIONS
------	--------	------------

No terms available. [Add term](#).

- Click **+ Add term**. Enter "Butter" in the *Name* field. Click **Save**.

## Add term

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#) » [Ingredients](#)

**Name \***  
  
 The term name.

**Description**  
 Butter  
 A description of the term.

**Text format** Basic HTML [About text formats](#)

**RELATIONS**

**URL alias**

Specify an alternative path by which this data can be accessed. For example, type "/about" when writing an about page.

**Save**

5. You will receive a confirmation about the term you created. Add more terms. For example, "Eggs" and "Milk".
6. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content Types* (*admin/structure/types*). Click *Manage fields* for your Recipe content type.
7. Click *Add field*, and enter values from the table below. Click *Save and continue*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Select the field type	Reference > Taxonomy term
Label	The title to give the field	Ingredients

## Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#)

### Add a new field

Taxonomy term

### Re-use an existing field

or

- Select an existing field -

#### Label \*

Ingredients

Machine name: field\_ingredients [[Edit](#)]

[Save and continue](#)

8. On the following configuration screen, enter the values from the table below. Click *Save field settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Type of item to reference	The type of entity that is referenced by the field	Taxonomy term
Allowed number of values	The number of values a user can enter	Unlimited

These settings apply to the *Ingredients* field everywhere it is used. These settings impact the way that data is stored in the database and cannot be changed once data has been created.

#### Type of item to reference \*

Taxonomy term

#### Allowed number of values

Unlimited

[Save field settings](#)

9. On the following configuration screen, enter the values from the table below. Click *Save settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Help text	Help shown to users creating content	Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for
Reference type > Reference method	Select the method used to choose allowed values	Default

Field name	Explanation	Value
Reference type > Available Vocabularies	Select the vocabulary to choose allowed values from	Ingredients
Reference type > Create referenced entities if they don't already exist	Whether new ingredient terms can be created from the content editing form	Checked

**Label \***  
Ingredients

**Help text**  
Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.  
 Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
 This field supports tokens.

Required field

**DEFAULT VALUE**

**REFERENCE TYPE**

**Reference method \***

Create referenced entities if they don't already exist

**Available Vocabularies \***  
 Ingredients  
 Tags

**Save settings** [Delete](#)

10. Click *Save settings*. You will be taken back to the *Manage Fields* page. A message will be displayed saying that the configuration for Ingredients is complete.

**Manage fields ☆**

[Edit](#) [Manage fields](#) [Manage form display](#) [Manage display](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Recipe

**+ Add field**

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	<a href="#">Edit</a> <input type="button" value="More options"/>
Ingredients	field_ingredients	Entity reference	<a href="#">Edit</a> <input type="button" value="More options"/>
Main image	field_main_image	Image	<a href="#">Edit</a> <input type="button" value="More options"/>

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Bob Snodgrass](#), and [Joy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 6.7. Adding a Reference Field

### Goal

Add a reference field so that recipes can be linked to the vendor that has submitted it.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)
- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The Recipe and Vendor content types must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). Then click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the Recipe content type. The *Manage fields* page appears.
2. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save and continue*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Option to specify the field type	Reference > Content
Label	The title you want to give the field	Submitted by

## Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#)

### Add a new field

Content

### Re-use an existing field

or

- Select an existing field -

#### Label \*

Submitted by

Machine name: field\_submitted\_by [[Edit](#)]

[Save and continue](#)

3. The page Submitted by appears which lets you set the allowed number of values. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save field settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Type of item to reference	Option to select the type of referenced item	Content
Allowed number of values	Specify the count of values associated with the field	Limited, 1

## Submitted by ☆

[Edit](#)

[Field settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#) » [Submitted by](#)

These settings apply to the *Submitted by* field everywhere it is used. These settings impact the way that data is stored in the database and cannot be changed once data has been created.

#### Type of item to reference \*

Content

#### Allowed number of values

Limited

1

[Save field settings](#)

4. The page *Submitted by settings for Recipe* appears which allows you to configure the field. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Label	Title shown for this field on the page	Submitted by
Help text	Brief text aiding the person creating content	Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe
Required field	Whether a value has to be provided or not	Checked
Reference method	Option to select reference method	Default
Content types	Specify the content type	Vendor
Sort by	Sorting field	Title
Sort direction	Sorting order	Ascending

**Help text**  
Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.  
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <b> <big> <code> <del> <em> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <span> <strong> <sub> <sup> <tt> <ol> <ul> <li> <p> <br> <img>  
This field supports tokens.

Required field

**DEFAULT VALUE**  
The default value for this field, used when creating new content.  
**Submitted by**

**REFERENCE TYPE**

**Reference method \***  
Default  
 Create referenced entities if they don't already exist

**Content types \***  
 Basic page  
 Recipe  
 Vendor

**Sort by**  
Vendor name

**Sort direction \***  
Ascending

**Save settings** [Delete](#)

5. The Submitted by field has been added to the content type.

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	<button>Edit</button>
Ingredients	field_ingredients	Entity reference	<button>Edit</button>
Main image	field_main_image	Image	<button>Edit</button>
Submitted by	field_submitted_by	Entity reference	<button>Edit</button>

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 6.8. Concept: Forms and Widgets

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, #####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### ##### #####](#)

### What are forms and widgets?

The content management system software that your site is running allows administrators to edit content and configure settings online, using various web *forms*. In particular, *content editing forms* are used to edit your site's content, and they are configurable by administrators; settings configuration forms are provided by modules and cannot themselves be configured.

The data in your site's content is stored in one or more fields that are attached to the content type and/or sub-type. When you configure the content editing form for each content sub-type, you can:

- Select a *widget* for each field. A widget defines the method used to enter the data for the field. For example, a taxonomy term can be chosen using an autocomplete field, a select list, or a tags-style field that lets editors add new tags automatically.
- Configure widget settings. For example, you can choose the size of a plain-text entry field.

- Hide one or more fields from the editing form.
- Reorder the fields.

In principle, you can also have multiple content editing forms available for each content subtype. This feature is rarely used, however; the only exception in common use is for the user profile fields: you can use different forms for user registration and user editing. For example, you might have a limited set of fields shown when users first register on the site, and more fields shown later on when they edit their profiles.

## Related topics

- [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

# 6.9. Changing Content Entry Forms

## Goal

Change the Recipe form to use a different widget to enter terms in the Ingredients field.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 6.8, "Concept: Forms and Widgets"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The Recipe content type must exist, and it must have an Ingredients taxonomy term reference field. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#) and [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Recipe (node/add/recipe)* to look at the content entry form that is set up by default. Notice how you have to enter ingredients one by one, instead of having a more compact format.
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Then click *Manage form display* on the dropdown button for the Recipe content type. The *Manage form display* page appears.
3. For the Ingredients field, select *Autocomplete (Tags style)* in the *Widget* column.

FIELD	WIDGET	
✚ Recipe name	Textfield ▾	Textfield size: 60
✚ Authored by	Autocomplete ▾	Autocomplete matching: Contains Textfield size: 60 No placeholder
✚ Authored on	Datetime Timestamp ▾	
✚ Promoted to front page	Single on/off checkbox ▾	Use field label: Yes
✚ Sticky at top of lists	Single on/off checkbox ▾	Use field label: Yes
✚ URL alias	URL alias ▾	
✚ Body	Text area with a summary ▾	Number of rows: 9 Number of summary rows: 3
✚ Main image	Image ▾	Preview image style: Thumbnail (100x100) Progress indicator: throbber
✚ Ingredients	Autocomplete (Tags style) ▾	Autocomplete matching: Contains Textfield size: 60 No placeholder
✚ Submitted by	Autocomplete ▾	Autocomplete matching: Contains Textfield size: 60 No placeholder
<b>Disabled</b>		
No field is hidden.		
<b>Save</b>		

4. Click **Save**.
5. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Recipe (node/add/recipe)* to verify the changed behavior of the content form. The Ingredients field is now a single text field that accepts multiple values.

**Create Recipe**

Home » Node » Add content

**Recipe name \***

**Body (Edit summary)**

**Main image \***

**Ingredients**

**Submitted by \***

**Last saved:** Not saved yet  
**Author:** admin  
 Create new revision

**Revision log message**

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

**URL PATH SETTINGS**

**AUTHORING INFORMATION**

**PROMOTION OPTIONS**

**Text format** Basic HTML **About text formats**

**Save and publish** **Preview**

6. Create two Recipe content items (see [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)), such as recipes for "Green Salad" and "Fresh Carrots". Make sure all the fields have values, including images, ingredients, and submitted by (set this to one of the Vendor content items you created in [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)).

## Expand your understanding

Change the main site Contact form by navigating in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Contact forms*. For instance, you may want to hide the *Send yourself a copy* or *Language* fields.

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 6.10. Concept: View Modes and Formatters

### Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"

### What is a View mode?

How an entity (such as content, a user or a comment) is displayed, depends on the context in which it is shown. This context is known as a *view mode*. Examples of view modes are:

- a full page of the content with all the field values
- a teaser of the content with a thumbnail image and a *Read more* link
- a full user profile with a zoomable portrait photo
- a user avatar with username and a link to the profile

Every view mode can be configured through the administration pages. To see the configuration options for the view modes of the Recipe content type, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)* and click *Manage display* from the dropdown button. In each view mode, all fields can be hidden or displayed, and if they are displayed, you can choose and configure the field formatter.

### What is a field formatter?

A field formatter is a setting for displaying the field values. For example, long text fields can be displayed trimmed or full-length, and taxonomy term reference fields can be displayed in plain text or linked to the taxonomy term page. Consult the *Manage display* page to see the field formatters for the fields of the Recipe content type.

### Related topics

- #### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"
- #### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"

### Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "View modes"](#)

## Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from "[View modes](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

# 6.11. Changing Content Display

## Goal

Make the content items more readable, accessible, and visibly attractive by reordering the fields, hiding labels, and tuning the output of the fields.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The Vendor content type must exist, it must have Main Image and Vendor URL fields, and your site must have at least one Vendor content item. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

## Steps

1. Find and view a Vendor content item you created in [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#). Notice that there are several things that could be done to improve how the page looks:
  - The Main Image and Vendor URL fields should not have labels.
  - The order of the fields should be changed so that the image comes first.
  - The image should be smaller.
2. To fix the first two problems, and update some additional settings, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Then click *Manage display* in the dropdown button for the Vendor content type.

Content types ☆		
NAME	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
Basic page	Use basic pages for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	<a href="#">Manage fields</a> ▾
Recipe	Recipe submitted by a vendor	<a href="#">Manage fields</a> ▾
Vendor	Information about a vendor	<a href="#">Manage fields</a> ▾ <a href="#">Manage form display</a> <a href="#">Manage display</a> <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

3. Under the *Label* column, select *Hidden* for Main image. Do the same for Vendor URL.

FIELD			LABEL	FORMAT	Show row weights
⊕	Links			Visible ▾	
⊕	Body	- Hidden - ▾		Default ▾	
⊕	Vendor URL	- Hidden - ▾		Link ▾	Link text trimmed to 80 characters ⚙
⊕	Main image	- Hidden - ▾		Image ▾	Original image ⚙
<b>Disabled</b>					
No field is hidden.					

4. Click the gear for the Vendor URL field. Clear the *Trim link text length* setting. Links will no longer have a trim length. Check the *Open link in new window* checkbox. Now, when the link is clicked, it will open in a new browser window. Click *Update*.

### Format settings: Link

#### Trim link text length

characters

Leave blank to allow unlimited link text lengths.

URL only

Show URL as plain text

Add rel="nofollow" to links

Open link in new window

**Update**    **Cancel**

- Drag the cross arrows next to the field items to reorder as Main image, *Body*, Vendor URL, and *Links*.

**\*You have unsaved changes.**

FIELD	LABEL	FORMAT	
>Main image	- Hidden -	Image	Original image
Body	- Hidden -	Default	
Vendor URL	- Hidden -	Link	Link text not trimmed Open link in new window
Links		Visible	
<b>Disabled</b>			
No field is hidden.			

- Click *Save*.

7. Find the Vendor content item from step <sup>1</sup> again, and verify that the updates have been made.
8. Repeat similar steps to manage the display of the Recipe content type fields.

## Expand your understanding

- Make the main image smaller. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Related concepts

[#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Specify how fields are displayed"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Rearrange the order of fields"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "View modes"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Ann Greazel](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

# 6.12. Concept: Image Styles

## Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

## What are image styles?

Image styles allow you to upload a single image but display it in several ways; each display variation, or *image style*, is the result of applying one or more *effects* to the original image.

As an example, you might upload a high-resolution image with a <sup>4:3</sup> aspect ratio, and display it scaled down, square cropped, or black-and-white (or any combination of these effects). The core software provides a way to do this efficiently:

1. Configure an image style with the desired effects on the *Image styles* page ([admin/config/media/image-styles](#)).
2. The effects will be applied the first time a particular image is requested in that style.
3. The resulting image is saved.
4. The next time that same style is requested, the saved image is retrieved without the need to recalculate the effects.

The core software provides several effects that you can use to define styles; others may be provided by contributed modules.

Visit the *Image styles* page via the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > Image styles* ([admin/config/media/image-styles](#)) to see the image styles that are defined by default.

## Related topics

- [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#)
- [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), from ["Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 6.13. Setting Up an Image Style

### Goal

Add an image style and use it to display images on Vendor pages.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- Vendor and Recipe content types must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).
- Main image fields must exist for both content types. See [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#).
- Content items must exist for both content types. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > Image styles* ([admin/config/media/image-styles](#)).
2. Click *Add image style*.
3. Enter the name *Extra medium (300x200)*
4. Click *Create new style*. The page *Edit style Extra medium (300x200)* appears.
5. In the *Effect* table, select *Scale and crop*. Click *Add*.
6. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Width	300
Height	200

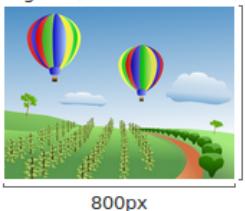
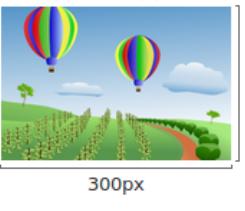
7. Click *Add effect*. The image style is saved with the chosen effects.

### Edit style Extra medium (300x200) ☆

Home » Administration » Configuration » Media » Image styles

✓ The image effect was successfully applied.

**Preview**

 original (view actual size)	 Extra medium (300x200) (view actual size)
600px	200px

**Image style name \***

Machine name: extra\_medium\_300x200 [Edit]

[Show row weights](#)

EFFECT	OPERATIONS
<span style="font-size: small;">⊕</span> Scale and crop 300×200	<a href="#">Edit</a> <span style="font-size: small;">▼</span>
<span style="font-size: small;">⊕</span> <input style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;" type="button" value="Select a new effect"/> <span style="font-size: small;">▼</span>	<a href="#">Add</a>

[Update style](#) Delete

8. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*).

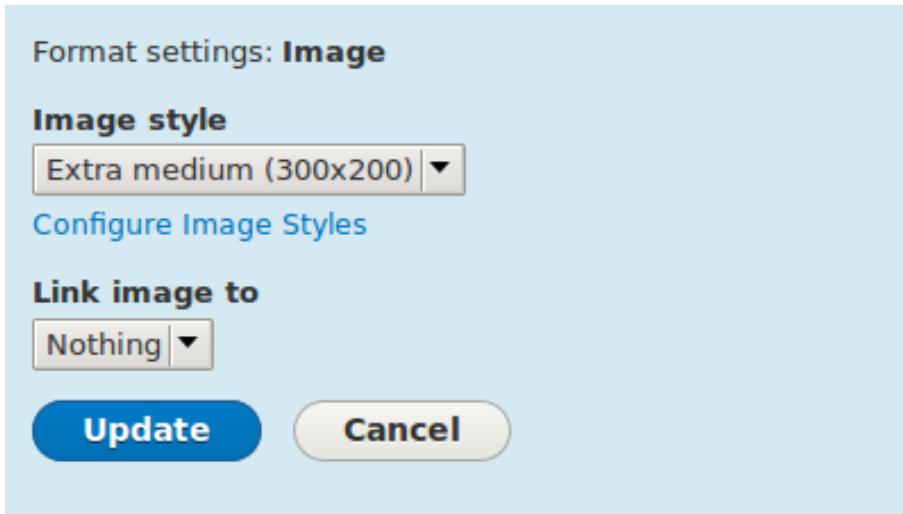
9. Click *Manage display* in the *Operations* dropdown for the Vendor content type. The *Manage display* page (*admin/structure/types/manage/vendor/display*) appears.

10. Ensure that the secondary tab *Default* is selected.

11. Click the cogwheel next to *Main image* for the configuration options.

12. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Image style	Extra medium (300x200)
Link image to	Nothing



13. Click *Update*.
14. Click *Save*. The new image style will be used while displaying Vendor content.
15. Open a Vendor content item and verify that it now shows up with the scaled-down image. See [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#) for information on how to locate an existing content item.
16. Repeat steps 8-15 for the Recipe content type.

## Related concepts

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) from ["Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 6.14. Concept: Responsive Image Styles

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

### What are responsive image styles?

The core Responsive Image module provides responsive image styles. This allows you to have images in your website that are specifically sized for different screen sizes. This is useful, for example, to make your site load faster on mobile devices because image sizes are optimized for smaller screens.

A responsive image style is a mapping between images styles and breakpoints. Breakpoints are the points where a responsive design needs to change in order to respond to different screen sizes. Responsive image styles can only be used if the breakpoints are defined in the theme.

When a responsive image style is defined, it can be used in the display settings for Image fields. This allows the site to display responsive images using the HTML5 picture tag.

### Related topics

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

### Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Responsive web design"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Responsive images in Drupal 8"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with breakpoints in Drupal 8"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from [Responsive images in Drupal 8](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 6.15. Concept: Text Formats and Editors

### What are text formats and filters?

*Text formats* change how HTML tags and other text are processed and displayed on your site.

Text formats are composed of a series of *filters*, each of which transforms text. When users create content, a text format is associated with the content, and the full, original text is stored in the database. The content is then passed through the filters in the text format before it becomes output on the site.

The core Filter module provides text format functionality, and the core Standard installation profile sets up *Basic HTML*, *Restricted HTML*, and *Full HTML* text formats. Each text format has an associated permission, so that you can allow only trusted users to use permissive text formats. This restricts untrusted users to text formats like *Basic HTML*, which filters out dangerous HTML tags.

### What are the editors associated with text formats?

Each text format can be associated with an editor, such as a visual WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get) HTML editor. The core Text Editor module provides the ability to associate editors with text formats, and to configure the editors (such as adding and removing buttons from their toolbars). The core CKEditor module provides the industry-standard editor known as CKEditor, so that it can be used to edit HTML content on your site.

### What is cross-site scripting?

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a security vulnerability typically found in websites. In a site that is not well protected, malicious users can enter script into web pages that are viewed by other users (for example, in a comment or in the body of a page). A cross-site scripting vulnerability may be used by attackers to login as another user. It is important to configure the text formats of your website to prevent such abuse.

### Related topics

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

### Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Filter module: text formats that filter user input"](#)

- [Wikipedia page "Cross-site scripting"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 6.16. Configuring Text Formats and Editors

### Goal

Add a horizontal rule tag to the *Basic HTML* text format, and a corresponding button to its editor configuration.

### Prerequisite knowledge

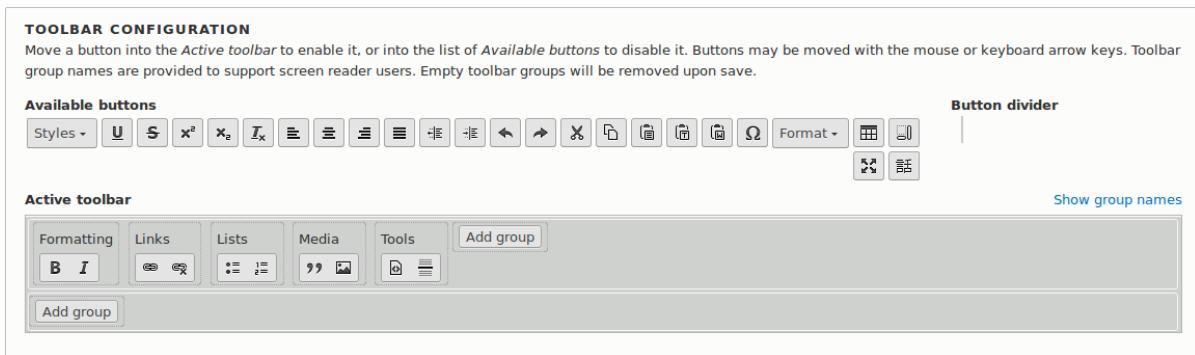
[#### 6.15, "Concept: Text Formats and Editors"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Filter, Editor, and CKEditor modules must be installed. They are installed on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.
- The *Basic HTML* text format must exist. This is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Content authoring > Text formats and editors* (`admin/config/content/formats`). The *Text formats and editors* page appears.
2. Click *Configure* for the *Basic HTML* text format. The *Basic HTML* page appears.
3. Note that *CKEditor* is selected in the *Text editor* field. This allows you to configure the editor's toolbar.
4. Drag the *horizontal rule* button from *Available buttons* to *Tools* in *Active toolbar*. You may need to click the *Show group names* link to see the *Tools* group name.



5. Note that you can change the *Filter processing order*.
6. In the field *Allowed HTML tags*, add <hr> to what is already present.

#### Filter settings

**Limit allowed HTML tags and correct faulty HTML**

Enabled

**Allowed HTML tags**

```
<hr> <a href hreflang> <em> <strong> <cite> <blockquote cite> <cc>
```

A list of HTML tags that can be used. By default only the *lang* and *dir* attributes are allowed for all HTML tags. Each HTML tag may have attributes which are treated as allowed attribute names for that HTML tag. Each attribute may allow all values, or only allow specific values. Attribute names or values may be written as a prefix and wildcard like *jump-\**. JavaScript event attributes, JavaScript URLs, and CSS are always stripped.

Display basic HTML help in long filter tips

Add rel="nofollow" to all links

7. Click *Save configuration*. You will be taken back to the *Text formats and editors* page. A message will be displayed saying that the text format has been updated.

The text format *Basic HTML* has been updated.

## Expand your understanding

If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

---

# ی رب راک ی اهاب اسح تی دم 7 لصف

## 7.1. Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions

### What are Users?

Anyone who visits your website is a *user*, including you. There are three groups of users:

- Users who are not logged in, or *anonymous users*
- Users who are logged in, or *authenticated users*
- The administrative user account that was automatically created when you installed your site, or User 1. See [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#).

### What are Permissions?

The ability to do actions on your site (including viewing content, editing content, and changing configuration) is governed by *permissions*. Each permission has a name (such as

*View published content*) and covers one action or a small subset of actions. A user must be granted a permission in order to do the corresponding action on the site; permissions are defined by the modules that provide the actions.

### What are Roles?

Rather than assigning individual permissions directly to each user, permissions are grouped into *roles*. You can define one or more roles on your site, and then grant permissions to each

role. The permissions granted to authenticated and anonymous users are contained in the *Authenticated user* and *Anonymous user* roles, and depending on the installation profile you used when you installed your site, there may also be an *Administrator* role that is automatically assigned all permissions on your site.

Each user account on your site is automatically given the *Authenticated user* role, and may optionally be assigned one or more additional roles. When you assign a role to a user account, the user will have all the permissions of the role when logged in.

It is a good practice to make several roles on your site. In the farmers market site example, you might want the following roles:

- A Vendor role that allows vendors to edit their own vendor listing page
- A Content editor role for editing the general farmers market pages
- A User manager role for managing the vendor accounts
- The *Administrator* role that was installed with your site, for expert users to manage the site configuration

## Related topics

- [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)
- [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#)
- [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User Account"](#)
- [#### 7.7, "Assigning Authors to Content"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Users, roles and permissions"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Managing Users"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "User Roles"](#)

## Attributions

Adapted by [Mark LaCroix](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) from "[User Roles](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 7.2. Concept: The User <sup>1</sup> Account

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

## What is the user<sup>1</sup> account?

During the installation of your site, you created the first user account. Each user account internally has a numeric user ID, and since the ID of this user is one, it is commonly referred to as the *user 1* account. This user account is special, because independent of what roles it is

assigned, someone logged in as user<sup>1</sup> has permission to do all actions on the site, including viewing and editing all content, editing any user account, changing site configuration, installing and uninstalling modules, and running the update script.

Because of this level of permission, some people refer to this account as the *root user*, similar to the "root" user account that has full administrative permissions in Linux and other operating systems.

It is usually better to make separate accounts for each administrative user, giving them the *Administrator* role, rather than having all administrative users log in using the user 1 account.

There are several reasons for this:

- Some actions and updates on the site are logged, and if everyone uses the same account, it is difficult to know who did them if you have questions.
- The *Administrator* role permissions can be modified to be safer than the full permissions of the user<sup>1</sup> account, so that people do not inadvertently change site features that shouldn't be changed.
- People's responsibilities on a site may change over time. With ordinary user accounts, this can be mirrored in permissions by assigning or unassigning roles to their user accounts. If they are all using the user<sup>1</sup> account, this is more difficult.
- On some sites, the author of content or comments is displayed or tracked, and if everyone uses the same account to create content, it is difficult to know who created the content.

It is not possible to delete the user<sup>1</sup> account from the administrative user interface. It would be possible to do with a database query, but it could cause problems in your site and is not advisable.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Accounts and roles"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Mark LaCroix](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 7.3. Creating a Role

### Goal

Create a Vendor role to allow some - but not all - users to perform specific tasks.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[\*\*#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"\*\*](#)

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People > Roles* (`admin/people/roles`).
2. You will find default roles *Anonymous user*, *Authenticated user*, and *Administrator* already present.

The screenshot shows the 'Roles' administration page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Home', 'Administration', and 'People'. Below the navigation is a brief description of what a role is: 'A role defines a group of users that have certain privileges. These privileges are defined on the [Permissions page](#). Here, you can define the names and the display sort order of the roles on your site. It is recommended to order roles from least permissive (for example, Anonymous user) to most permissive (for example, Administrator user). Users who are not logged in have the Anonymous user role. Users who are logged in have the Authenticated user role, plus any other roles granted to their user account.' There is a blue '+ Add role' button. The main table lists the roles:

NAME	OPERATIONS
Anonymous user	Edit
Authenticated user	Edit
Administrator	Edit

At the bottom left is a blue 'Save' button.

3. Click *Add Role* to add a custom role.
4. Type *Vendor* in the *Role name* field. Click *Save*.

**Add role ★**

Home » Administration » People » Roles

**Role name \***

Vendor Machine name: vendor [Edit]

The name for this role. Example: "Moderator", "Editorial board", "Site architect".

**Save**

5. You will see the message "Role Vendor has been added." displayed at the top of the page.

✓ Role Vendor has been added.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "User Roles"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Jack Probst](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) from ["User Roles"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 7.4. Creating a User Account

### Goal

Create Vendor user accounts for Sweet Honey and Happy Farm vendors.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

- [7.2, "Concept: The User Account"](#)
- [7.3, "Creating a Role"](#)

## Site prerequisites

The Vendor role must exist on your site. See [7.3, "Creating a Role"](#).

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People (admin/people)*.
2. Click *Add user*.

## Add user

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [People](#)

This web page allows administrators to register new users. Users' email addresses and usernames must be unique.

**Email address**  
  
 A valid email address. All emails from the system will be sent to this address. The email address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by email.

**Username \***  
  
 Several special characters are allowed, including space, period (.), hyphen (-), apostrophe ('), underscore (\_), and the @ sign.

**Password \***  
   
 Password strength:

**Confirm password \***  
  
 Passwords match:

Provide a password for the new account in both fields.

**Status**  
 Blocked  
 Active

**Roles**  
 Authenticated user  
 Administrator  
 Vendor  
 Notify user of new account

**Picture**

3. Fill in the form fields. See the table below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Email address	A valid email address for the vendor. All emails from the system will be sent to this address. The email address is <u>not made public</u> .	<a href="mailto:honey@example.com">honey@example.com</a>
Username	A username for the vendor that they will use to sign in or author content items. Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods,	Sweet Honey

Field name	Explanation	Example value
	hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.	
Password	A password the vendor will use to sign in to the site. You can see how safe the password is on the <i>Password strength</i> gauge.  You also get tips on how to make it safer.	(Make a secure password)
Confirm password	Type the same password to avoid any typing mistakes.	(Repeat password)
Status	Set the status of the user account. <i>Blocked</i> users will not be able to sign in.	Active
Roles	Set the role of the user account.	Vendor
Notify user of new account	Whether or not to send a notification to the vendor's email address.	Checked
Picture	Click <i>Browse</i> and select a picture to upload. Pay attention to size restrictions.	Photo of the vendor
Contact settings	Enable or disable the display of a contact form for the account.	Checked

4. Click *Create new account*. You will get a notification about the user account creation.

✓ The image was resized to fit within the maximum allowed dimensions of 85x85 pixels.

A welcome message with further instructions has been emailed to the new user [Sweet Honey](#).

5. Create a second Vendor account for Happy Farm by following the steps above.

## Expand your understanding

Create a user account for yourself.

### Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

## 7.5. Assigning Permissions to a Role

### Goal

Change the permissions for the Vendor role so that users can create, edit, and delete Recipe and Vendor content, format the content, and contact each other.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"

### Site prerequisites

The Vendor role must exist on your site. See [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People > Roles* ([admin/people/roles](#)). The *Roles* page appears.
2. Click *Edit permissions* in the dropdown for the Vendor role. The *Edit role* page appears where you can see all the available actions for the website such as, for example, *Post comments* or *Administer blocks*. The available permissions depend on the modules that are installed in the site. Note: Some permissions may have security implications. Be cautious while assigning permissions to roles.
3. Check the boxes for the following permissions, listed by module:

Module	Permission
Contact	Use users' personal contact forms
Filter	Use the Restricted HTML text format
Node	Recipe: Create new content
Node	Recipe: Edit own content
Node	Recipe: Delete own content
Node	Vendor: Edit own content

Module	Permission
Quick Edit	Access in-place editing

PERMISSION	VENDOR
Basic page: View revisions	<input type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Create new content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Delete any content	<input type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Delete own content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Delete revisions Role requires permission to view revisions and delete rights for nodes in question, or administer nodes.	<input type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Edit any content	<input type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Edit own content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: Revert revisions Role requires permission view revisions and edit rights for nodes in question, or administer nodes.	<input type="checkbox"/>
Recipe: View revisions	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Create new content	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Delete any content	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Delete own content	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Delete revisions Role requires permission to view revisions and delete rights for nodes in question, or administer nodes.	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Edit any content	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Edit own content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: Revert revisions Role requires permission view revisions and edit rights for nodes in question, or administer nodes.	<input type="checkbox"/>
Vendor: View revisions	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Path</b>	

4. Click *Save permissions*. You will get a message saying your changes have been saved.

 The changes have been saved.

## Expand your understanding

- Log in as one of the new users you created in [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#). Verify whether you have the correct permissions.
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)

## Related concepts

[#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Managing Users"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), [Brian Emery](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), from ["User Roles"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 7.6. Changing a User's Roles

### Goal

Change or add roles to a given user, either by editing a single-user or by applying a bulk operation.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

### Site prerequisites

The user account that you want to update, and the role you want it to have, must already exist. See [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#), [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#), and [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#).

## Steps

### Updating the roles using single-user editing method

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People* (*admin/people*).
2. Locate the user 1 account (named "admin") to assign it the *Administrator* role. If it is not immediately visible, use the *Name or email contains* filter, or other filters, to narrow down the list.
3. Click *Edit* to update the user account.

<input type="checkbox"/> USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/> Happy Farm	Active	• Vendor	5 seconds	never	<button>Edit</button>
<input type="checkbox"/> Sweet Honey	Active	• Vendor	8 seconds	never	<button>Edit</button>
<input type="checkbox"/> admin	Active	• Administrator	11 minutes 6 seconds	2 minutes 37 seconds ago	<button>Edit</button>

4. On the *Edit* page, scroll down to *Roles* section. Check the *Administrator* role for the user account.

### Roles

- Authenticated user**
- Administrator**
- Vendor**

5. Click *Save* to update the user account. You should be returned to the *People* page and see a message saying that the changes have been saved.

 The changes have been saved.

## Updating the roles using bulk editing method

1. If the users Happy Farm and Sweet Honey did not already have the Vendor role, here is how you would add it. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People* (*admin/people*).
2. Locate Vendor user accounts *Sweet Honey* and *Happy Farm* and check them. If they are not immediately visible, use the *Name or email contains* filter, or other filters, to narrow down the list.
3. Select *Add the Vendor role to the selected users* from the *Action* select list.

Action  
Add the Vendor role to the selected users

Apply to selected items

<input type="checkbox"/>	USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Happy Farm	Active	• Vendor	12 seconds	never	<button>Edit</button>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Sweet Honey	Active	• Vendor	14 seconds	never	<button>Edit</button>
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	Active	• Administrator	3 days 2 hours	54 seconds ago	<button>Edit</button>

Apply to selected items

4. Click *Apply to selected items*. You should see a message indicating that the desired changes were made.

 Add the Vendor role to the selected users was applied to 2 items.

## Attributions

Written by [Chris Dart](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)

## 7.7. Assigning Authors to Content

### Goal

Assign Vendor content items Happy Farm and Sweet Honey to the corresponding Vendor user accounts, so they can edit their own Vendor profiles on the site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"

### Site prerequisites

- The Vendor content type must exist, and your site must have at least two Vendor content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- User accounts for at least two vendors must exist. See [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#).

### Steps

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).
- Find Vendor content item Happy Farm in the list. If it is not immediately visible, you can filter the list by *Published status*, *Content type* (Vendor), *Title*, or *Language*. Click *Edit* for the Vendor content item you would like to assign an author to.
- Locate the information block and click *Authoring information*.

**Published**

**Last saved:** 08/08/2016 - 14:02

**Author:** Happy Farm

Create new revision

**Revision log message**

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

▶ **URL PATH SETTINGS**

▼ **AUTHORING INFORMATION**

**Authored by**

Happy Farm (3)

The username of the content author.

**Authored on**

2016-08-08

14:00:52

Format: 2016-08-08 14:02:57. Leave blank to use the time of form submission.

▶ **PROMOTION OPTIONS**

4. Start typing the Vendor's user name Happy Farm in the *Authored by* field. The field lists matching user names. Select the Vendor's user name from the list.
5. Click *Save and keep published*.
6. You will get a notification that the Vendor content item has been updated.

✓ Vendor Happy Farm has been updated.

7. Follow these steps again to assign Vendor content item Sweet Honey to the Vendor user account Sweet Honey.

### Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

---

# اھک اآل ب. 8. لصف

## 8.1. Concept: Blocks

### What is a block?

*Blocks* are individual pieces of your site's web page layout. They are placed inside the regions (see [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#)) of your theme, and can be created, removed, and rearranged in the *Block layout (admin/structure/block)* administration page. Examples of blocks include the *Who's online* listing, the main navigation menu, and the breadcrumb trail.

The main page content is also a block.

Some modules make new blocks available for placement on your site. For example, when the core Search module is installed and configured, it provides a block that contains a search form. You may also create and place your own custom blocks.

Each block has its own configuration settings, which allow you to select which pages of your site will display the block. It is even possible to place multiple copies of a block, each with its own separate configuration and visibility rules.

### Related topics

- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#)
- [#### 8.2, "Creating A Custom Block"](#)
- [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Les Lim](#) from ["Working with blocks \(content in regions\)"](#) copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 8.2. Creating A Custom Block

### Goal

Create a block showing the hours and location of the farmers market.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"
- #### 2.1, "#####: ##### # # #####"

## Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout > Custom block library* (*admin/structure/block/block-content*).
2. Click *Add custom block*. The *Add custom block* page appears.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Block description	Hours and location block
Body	Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown Anytown.

**Add custom block** ★

[Home](#)

**Block description \***

Hours and location block

A brief description of your block.

**Body**

**Text format** Basic HTML ▾ [About text formats](#) ?

**Revision information**

New revision  Create new revision

**Revision log message**

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

**Save**

- Click **Save**. A message appears indicating the block has been saved.

## Expand your understanding

- Edit the content of your custom block. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout > Custom block library* (`admin/structure/block/block-content`). Find your block in the list and click *Edit* to make changes.
- Place the block you created in the sidebar. See [\*\*8.3, “Placing a Block in a Region”\*\*](#) for details.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with blocks \(content in regions\)"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Jacob Redding](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#) from [Working with blocks \(content in regions\)](#),  
copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 8.3. Placing a Block in a Region

### Goal

Place the Opening hours and location block in the website's sidebar.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Bartik theme must be installed and set as default. See [#### 4.6, "Configuring the Theme"](#).
- The Opening hours and location block must exist. See [#### 8.2, "Creating A Custom Block"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout* (`admin/structure/block`). The *Block layout* page appears, listing the theme's regions.
2. Ensure that in the secondary tab the core Bartik theme is selected. Block placement is defined per theme.
3. Locate the region *Sidebar second* in the list and click *Place block* next to it. The *Place block* window appears, listing all the blocks.

4. Locate the block Opening hours and location and click *Place block* next to it. The *Configure block* window appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Title	Hours and location
Display title	Checked
Region	Sidebar second

You can also hide or display the block on specific pages. In the case of the Farmer's market website you do not set any of these configuration options because you want to show the block everywhere.

The screenshot shows the 'Configure block' page for a 'Basic block Hours and location block'. The page includes a success message, block description, title, display title, visibility settings, region selection, and a save button.

**Configure block** ☆

Home » Administration » Structure » Block layout » Configure block

✓ Basic block *Hours and location* block has been created.

**Block description:** Hours and location block

**Title \***  
Hours and location Machine name: hours\_location [Edit]

**Display title**

**Visibility**

<b>Content types</b> Not restricted	<b>Content types</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Basic page <input type="checkbox"/> Recipe <input type="checkbox"/> Vendor
<b>Pages</b> Not restricted	
<b>Roles</b> Not restricted	

**Region**  
Sidebar second

Select the region where this block should be displayed.

**Save block**

5. Click *Save block*. The *Block layout* page appears. You can drag blocks to change the order in which they will appear.
6. Verify that the Opening hours and location block is listed in the *Sidebar second* region, and click *Save blocks*.

The block has been placed on the sidebar of all pages that use the core Bartik theme.

Anytown Farmers Market  
Farm Fresh Food

Home About

Tools  
[Add content](#)

[View](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#) [Revisions](#)

City Market started in April 1990 with five vendors.  
Today, it has 100 vendors and an average of 2000 visitors per day.

Hours and location  
Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September  
Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

## Expand your understanding

- Remove the *Powered by Drupal* block from the *Footer fifth* region by setting the region to - *None* -.
- Remove the *Tools* block from the *Sidebar first* region by setting the region to - *None* -. This block is only visible to logged-in users.
- Place the *User login* block in a region.
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

---

# زا ہدافت سا اب تسرہ ف داجیا 9. لصف

## Views

### 9.1. Concept: Uses of Views

#### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.4, #####: ##### # #####](#)
- [#### 2.3, #####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####](#)

#### What is a view?

A *view* is a listing of content on a website. The core Views module handles the display of views, and the core Views UI module allows you to create and edit them in the administrative interface. When you define views, you are interested in taking data from your website and displaying it to the user.

#### What types of data can be displayed using views?

You can create views to output practically any content entity that is stored in the system. For example, you can create the following lists for the farmers market site:

- Lists of vendors
- Lists of recipes
- Lists of the most recent content on the site
- Lists of users on the site

#### What are the ways data can be output using views?

A listing created by a view can be in any of the following forms:

- Table with sortable fields
- Grid layouts
- Teasers or pictures that link to articles
- Blocks
- JSON output

- RSS feeds
- Calendars
- On-screen slideshows

## Related topics

- [9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 9.2. Concept: The Parts of a View

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [2.3, "Concept: Views"](#)
- [2.4, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

### What are the parts of a view?

When you are editing a view in the administrative interface, you will see the following parts (or sections), which allow you to specify what data to output, in what order, and in what format:

#### Display

Each view can have one or more displays, each of which produces one type of output. Options for display types include:

#### Page

Makes output at a particular URL, for the main page content at that URL.

#### Block

Makes output in a block, which can be placed on pages.

### Feed

Makes an RSS or another type of feed.

### Attachment

Makes output that you can attach to another display.

### Format

Depending on the display type, you can choose to output your data in a table, grid, HTML list, or another format. Some formats also give you a second choice that lets you output either rendered entities or fields; other formats do not give you this choice (for example, if you use a table format, you must always use fields).

### Fields

Depending on the format choice, you may be able to choose which content fields are output. For example, if you were making a view of recipe content items, in a block display you might show only the recipe names, while in a full page display you might also show an image field because you have more space.

### Filter criteria

Filters limit the data to be output, based on criteria such as whether the content has been published or not, the type of content, or a field value. For instance, to make a view of recipe content items, you would need to filter to the Recipe content type, and to published recipes. Filters can also be *exposed*, which means that users will have a form where they

can choose their own filter values. You might use this on a Recipe page to let users filter for recipes with certain ingredients.

### Sort criteria

Defines the order to present the output, which can be based on any content field.

### Contextual filters

Contextual filters are like regular filters, except that the values come from the *context* of the view display, such as the full URL of the page being displayed, the current date or time, or some other value that can be detected by the view calculation.

### Relationships

Relationships allow you to expand what is displayed in your view, by relating the base content being displayed to other content entities. Relationships are created using fields on the base content that relate it to the other content; one example is that all regular content items have an author field, which references the user account of the person who authored the content. Once you have created a relationship, you can display fields from the referenced entity in the view.

## Related topics

[#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 9.3. Creating a Content List View

### Goal

Create a page listing vendors that will be automatically updated whenever a vendor is added, deleted, or updated on the site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"
- #### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"

### Site prerequisites

- The core Views and Views UI modules must be installed. These are installed for you when you install with the core Standard installation profile.
- The Vendor content type must exist, with URL and Main image fields. Your site must have a couple of Vendor content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The *Medium (220x220)* image style must be defined. This is created on your site when you install the core Image module (installed with the core Standard installation profile) but can be recreated if deleted. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).

### Steps

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views > Add view* (*admin/structure/views/add*). The *Add view* wizard appears.
- Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
View name	Name of the view that will be visible in the administration pages	Vendors
Show of type	Type of information listed in the view	Content
sorted by	Specify content type	Vendor
	List order	Title

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Create a page	Create a page that displays the view	Checked
Page title	Title show above the view	Vendors
Path	Address of the page	vendors
Display format	Type of list	Table 10
Items to display	Number of items visible on the page	
Use a pager	Split up the list in several pages if there are more items	Checked
Create a menu link	Add the view page to the menu	Checked
Menu	Menu in which to add the link	Main navigation
Link text	Label of the link in the menu	Vendors

**Add view ★**

Home » Administration » Structure » Views

**VIEW BASIC INFORMATION**

**View name \***  
 Machine name: vendors [\[Edit\]](#)

Description

**VIEW SETTINGS**

Show: Content of type: Vendor tagged with:  sorted by: Title

**PAGE SETTINGS**

Create a page

Page title: Vendors

Path: vendors

**PAGE DISPLAY SETTINGS**

Display format: Table of: teasers

Items to display: 10

3. Click *Save and edit*. The view configuration page appears.
4. Click *Add* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Add fields* pop-up appears.

5. Enter the word "image" in the search field.
6. Check Main image in the table.
7. Click *Apply*. The *Configure field: Content: Main Image* pop-up appears.
8. Fill in the fields as shown below.

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Create a label	Add a label before the field value	Unchecked
Image style	The format of the image	Medium (220x220)
Link image to	Add a link to the content item	Content

9. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
10. Click *Add* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Add fields* pop-up appears.
11. Enter the word "body" in the search field.
12. Select *Body* in the table.
13. Click *Apply*. The *Configure field: Content: Body* pop-up appears.
14. Fill in the fields as shown below.

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Create a label	Add a label before the field value	Unchecked
Formatter	The presentation of the field value	Summary or trimmed
Trimmed limit:	The number of maximum characters shown	120

15. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
16. Click *Content: Title (Title)* in the *Fields* list. The *Configure field: Content: Title* pop-up appears.
17. Uncheck *Create a label*. This will remove the label that was created by the wizard.
18. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
19. Click *Rearrange* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Rearrange fields* pop-up appears.
20. Drag the fields into the right order: Image, Title, Body.

21. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
22. Optionally, click *Update preview* for a preview.
23. Click *Save*.

The screenshot shows the 'Vendors (Content)' view configuration page. At the top, there is a success message: 'The view Vendors has been saved.' Below this, the 'Displays' section is visible, showing settings for a 'Page' display. The 'PAGE SETTINGS' section includes fields for Path (/vendors), Menu (Normal: Vendors), and Access (Permission | View published content). The 'FIELDS' section lists Content: Main image, Content: Title, and Content: Body. The 'FILTER CRITERIA' section lists Content: Publishing status (= Yes) and Content: Content type (= Vendor). The 'SORT CRITERIA' section lists Content: Title (asc). On the right side, there are sections for 'HEADER', 'FOOTER', 'NO RESULTS BEHAVIOR', and 'PAGER'. The 'PAGER' section shows settings for a 'Mini' pager with 10 items and a 'More link' option. At the bottom of the page are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

24. Navigate to the homepage and click Vendors from the main navigation to see the result.

The screenshot shows the homepage of the Anytown Farmers Market website. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for 'Home', 'About', and 'Vendors'. The 'Vendors' link is highlighted. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'Tools' and 'Add content' options. The main content area is titled 'Vendors' and displays two vendor entries in a grid format. The first entry is for 'Happy Farm', which grows vegetables. The second entry is for 'Sweet Honey', which produces honey. To the right of the grid, there is a box for 'Hours and location' stating the market is open on Sundays from 9 AM to 2 PM from April to September, and its location is the parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown.

Vendor	Image	Description
Happy Farm		Happy Farm grows vegetables that you will love.
Sweet Honey		Sweet Honey produces honey in a variety of flavors throughout the year.

## Expand your understanding

The link to the view in the main navigation will probably not be in the right place. Change the order of the menu items in the main navigation. See [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#).

### Attributions

Written/edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 9.4. Duplicating a View

### Goal

Create a page listing recipes by duplicating the existing Vendors view. Modify the page so that the recipes are displayed in a grid and can be filtered by ingredients.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)

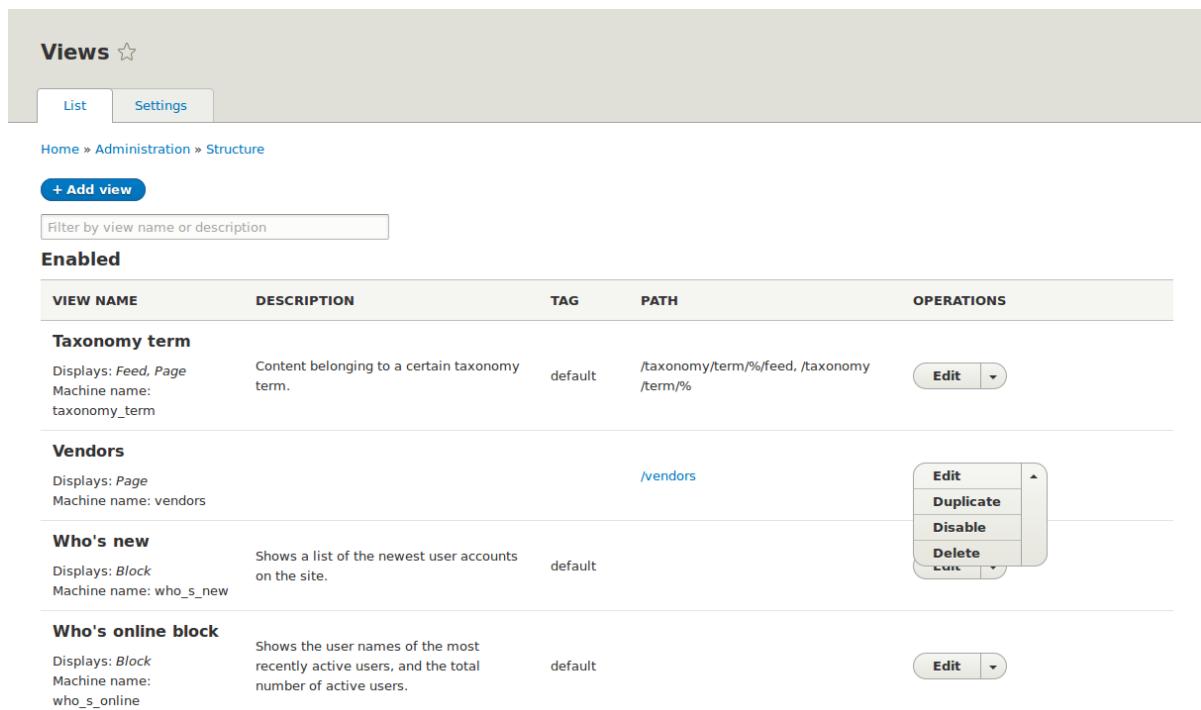
- #### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"
- #### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"

## Site prerequisites

- The Vendor and Recipe content types must exist; both must have Main image fields, and the Recipe content type must have an Ingredients field. Your site must also have a couple of Recipe content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#), [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The Vendors view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#).

## Steps

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views (admin/structure/views)*. Find the view "Vendors" and click *Duplicate* in its dropdown button.



VIEW NAME	DESCRIPTION	TAG	PATH	OPERATIONS
<b>Taxonomy term</b>	Content belonging to a certain taxonomy term.	default	/taxonomy/term/%/feed, /taxonomy/term/%	<a href="#">Edit</a>
<b>Vendors</b>	Displays: Page Machine name: vendors		/vendors	<a href="#">Edit</a> <b>Duplicate</b> <a href="#">Disable</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Run</a>
<b>Who's new</b>	Shows a list of the newest user accounts on the site.	default		
<b>Who's online block</b>	Shows the user names of the most recently active users, and the total number of active users.	default		<a href="#">Edit</a>

- Name the duplicate "Recipes" and click *Duplicate*. The view configuration page appears.

3. Change the title of the view page to "Recipes" by clicking Vendors in the *Title* section. The *Page: The title of this view* pop-up appears. Type in "Recipes". Click *Apply*.

**Title**

This title will be displayed with the view, wherever titles are normally displayed; i.e., as the page title, block title, etc.

**Apply**    **Cancel**

4. Change from a table to a grid format by clicking *Table* in the *Format* section. The *Page: How should this view be styled* pop-up appears. Check *Grid* and click *Apply*. The *Page: Style options* pop-up appears. Retain the default values and click *Apply*.
5. Retain only the title and image fields for the Recipes view by clicking *Content: Body* in the *Fields* section. Click *Remove* in the pop-up that appears.
6. Change the content type filter to use the Recipe content type by clicking *Content: Type (=Vendor)* in the *Filter criteria* section. In the *Configure filter criterion: Content: Type* pop-up, check Recipe and uncheck Vendor. Click *Apply*.
7. Add a further filter that is exposed to visitors by clicking *Add* in the *Filter criteria* section. Search for "ingredients" and check "Ingredients (field\_ingredients)". Click *Add and configure filter criteria*.
8. The appearing pop-up offers extra settings on vocabulary and selection type. Click *Apply and continue*. The next pop-up allows you to expose this filter to visitors. Fill in the fields as shown below, and click *Apply*.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Expose this filter to visitors, to allow them to change it	Allow visitors to filter and search	Checked
Required	Whether a value has to be provided or not	Unchecked
Label	Label shown for this filter on the view page	Find recipes using...

Appears in: recipe.

Expose this filter to visitors, to allow them to change it

**Filter type to expose**

- Single filter
- Grouped filters

Grouped filters allow a choice between predefined operator|value pairs.

Required

**Label**

Find recipes using...

**Description**

9. Change the *Path* label field to "Recipes" by clicking "/vendors" in the *Page settings* section.

In the pop-up that appears, enter the path "recipes" and click *Apply*.

Note that when editing a view, you enter paths without the leading "/", unlike on other administrative pages (such as when providing a path to a content item page).

10. Change the menu link title by clicking "Normal: Vendors" in the *Page settings* section. In

the pop-up that appears, change the title to "Recipes" and click *Apply*.

11. In order to use Ajax (see [Ajax entry in the Glossary](#)) to make filtering and paging faster for

users, click *Advanced* to expand the section for more options. In the *Other* section, change

*Use AJAX: No* to "Yes" by clicking *No* and checking *Use AJAX* in the pop-up that appears. Click

*Apply*.

12. Click *Save* to save the view.

13. Go back to the home page and click *Recipes* in the navigation to view the new Recipes page.

The screenshot shows the homepage of the Anytown Farmers Market website. At the top, there's a green header bar with the market's logo on the left, which includes a circular emblem with a sun, a house, and the text "ANYTOWN FARMERS MARKET" and "FARM FRESH FOOD". To the right of the logo, there are links for "My account" and "Log out". Below the header, the main navigation menu has items for "Home", "About", "Recipes" (which is currently selected), and "Vendors". The main content area is titled "Recipes" and features a search bar with the placeholder "Find recipes using...". Below the search bar are two images: one of fresh carrots arranged in a circle on a grassy field, and another of a green salad. There are also links for "Green Salad" and "Fresh Carrots". On the left side of the content area, there's a sidebar titled "Tools" with a "Add content" button. On the right side, there's a sidebar titled "Hours and location" with information about the market's operating hours and location.

## Expand your understanding

The link to the view in the main navigation will probably not be in the right place. Change the order of the menu items in the main navigation. See [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#).

## Related concepts

- [#### 2.5, "##### ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [Ajax entry in the Glossary](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), and [Lojy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 9.5. Adding a Block Display to a View

### Goal

Add a block display to the Recipes view to display the most recent recipes in a sidebar, and change its configuration without changing the existing Recipes page view.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

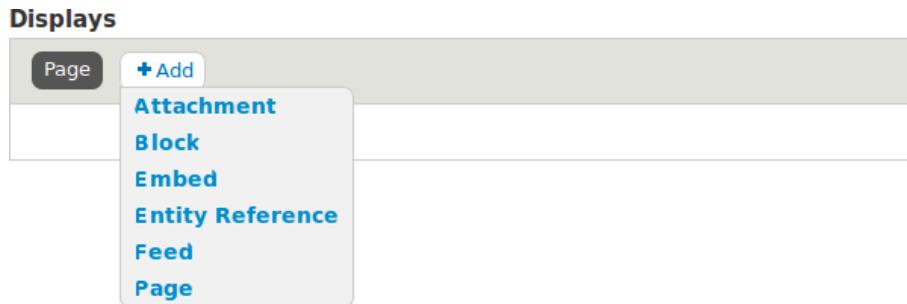
### Site prerequisites

- The Recipe content type must exist, it must have a Main image field, and your site must have a couple of Recipe content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The *Thumbnail (100x100)* image style must be defined. This is created on your site when you install the core Image module (installed with the core Standard installation profile) but can be recreated if deleted. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).
- The Recipes view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) and [#### 9.4, "Duplicating a View"](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views* (`admin/structure/views`). Find the view "Recipes" and click *Edit* from its dropdown button. Alternatively, navigate to the Recipes page in the main site navigation, and click the *Edit view* contextual link in the main area of the page. See [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for information about contextual links.

2. Create a new block display by clicking *Add* in the *Displays* section. Click *Block* from the dropdown button. The new display is created, and the focus is automatically switched to its configuration.



3. Change the title of this display by clicking *Block* next to *Display name*. The *Block: The name and the description of this display* pop-up appears. Change the *Administrative name* to "Recent recipes". Click *Apply*.
4. Change the title of the view by clicking *Title: Recipes* in the *Title* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Change the title to "New recipes" and click *Apply (this display)*.

**Recent recipes: The title of this view**

☆

Home > Administration > Structure > Views

**For**  
This block (override) ▾

**Title**  
New recipes

This title will be displayed with the view, wherever titles are normally displayed; i.e., as the page title, block title, etc.

**Apply** **Cancel**

5. Change the view's style by clicking *Format: Grid* in the *Format* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Select *Unformatted list* and Click *Apply (this display)*. You can further configure the style options in the next pop-up that appears. Then click *Apply*.

6. Configure the image field by clicking *Content: Main image* in the *Fields* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Select *Image style* *Thumbnail (100x100)*. Click *Apply (this display)*.

## Configure field: Content: Main image

★

Home » Administration » Structure » Views

**For**

This block (override) ▾

Appears in: vendor, recipe.

Create a label

**Label**

Place a colon after the label

Exclude from display

Enable to load this field as hidden. Often used to group fields, or to use as token in another field.

**Column used for click sorting**

target\_id ▾

Used by Style: Table to determine the actual column to click sort the field on. The default is usually fine.

**Formatter**

Image ▾

**Image style**

Thumbnail (100×100) ▾

[Configure Image Styles](#)

**Link image to**

Content ▾

**STYLE SETTINGS**

**REWRITE RESULTS**

7. Remove ingredients as a filter by clicking *Content: Ingredients (exposed)* in the *Filter criteria* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Click *Remove* at the bottom.
8. Configure how you want the content to be sorted in the view by clicking *Add* in the *Sort criteria* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Check the field *Authored on* (from Content category), and then *Add and configure sort criteria*.
9. In the appearing configuration pop-up, select *Sort descending* to have the most recent recipes appear first. Click *Apply*.
10. Specify the number of items to be displayed by clicking *Use pager: Mini* in the *Pager* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Under *Pager*, select *Display a specified number of items*. Click *Apply (this display)*. In the *Block: Pager options* pop-up, provide "5" as the value for *Items to display*. Click *Apply*.
11. Click *Save*. You will either see the view editing page again, or the Recipes page, depending on what you did in step <sup>1</sup>. You should also see a message saying that the view has been saved.

 The view *Recipes* has been saved.

12. Place the "Recipes: Recent Recipes" block in the *Sidebar second* region. See [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#). Navigate to the site's home page to see the block.

The screenshot shows the homepage of the Anytown Farmers Market website. At the top, there is a green header bar with the market's logo on the left, which includes a circular icon with a sun, a house, and a farm, surrounded by the text "ANYTOWN FARMERS MARKET" and "FARM FRESH FOOD". To the right of the logo, there are links for "My account" and "Log out". Below the header, the main title "Anytown Farmers Market" is displayed, followed by the subtitle "Farm Fresh Food". A navigation menu at the bottom of the header includes "Home", "About", "Recipes", and "Vendors". The main content area has a white background. On the left, a sidebar titled "Tools" contains "Add content". The central content area is titled "Home" and features a welcome message: "Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!". It also lists the opening hours: "Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September" and the location: "Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown". On the right, a sidebar titled "Hours and location" provides the same information. Below these, another sidebar titled "New recipes" shows two thumbnail images: one for "Fresh Carrots" (a spiral-cut carrots) and one for "Green Salad" (a bowl of salad).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

---

# دوج تى اس ندرگ هنابزدنچ .10 لصف

## 10.1. Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)

### What can be translated on your site?

The base language for the software that your site runs (core software, modules, and theme) is English. However, you can create either a site that displays in a different language or a multilingual site; if you do so, all relevant text, images, and file attachments should be shown in the appropriate language for each site visitor. You need to have the core Language module installed in order to use a language other than English on the site.

There are three types of information that you can translate, each with its own method for translating:

#### User interface text

Built-in text present in the core software, modules, and themes. This can be translated from the base English language of the software into the language(s) of your site. Typically, rather than needing to translate this text yourself, you can download translations. You need to have the core Interface Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

#### Configuration text

Text whose structure and initial values are defined by the core software, modules, and theme, but that you can edit. Examples include the labels for fields in your content types, header text in views, your site name, and the content of automatic email messages that your site sends out. After creating configuration text in the default language of your site, you can translate it into other languages. You need to have the core Configuration Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

#### Content text and files

If your site is multilingual, you can configure the content fields on your site to be translatable. After creating content in one language, you can translate it into other languages. Fields can contain textual information or uploaded files, and for each field on

each content type, you can configure it to be translatable or non-translatable. You need to have the core Content Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

## Related topics

- [\*\*#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"\*\*](#)
- [\*\*#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"\*\*](#)
- [\*\*#### 10.4, "Translating Content"\*\*](#)
- [\*\*#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"\*\*](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

# 10.2. Adding a Language

## Goal

Add one or more languages to your site and define which one is used by default.

## Prerequisite knowledge

[\*\*#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"\*\*](#)

## Steps

1. Install the four core multilingual modules (Language, Interface Translation, Content Translation, and Configuration Translation), by following the steps in [\*\*#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"\*\*](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Languages* (`admin/config/regional/language`).
3. Click *Add language*.

4. Select *Spanish* (or your preferred language) from the *Language name* select list. Click *Add language*. After waiting for translations to finish downloading, you will be returned to the *Languages* page, with a confirmation message and the new language shown.

The screenshot shows the 'Languages' configuration page in Drupal. At the top, there are tabs for 'List' and 'Detection and selection'. Below the tabs, the breadcrumb navigation shows: Home > Administration > Configuration > Regional and language. A success message box contains the text: 'The language Spanish has been created and can now be used. Use one of the language switcher blocks to allow site visitors to switch between languages. You can enable these blocks on the block administration page. One translation file imported. 8057 translations were added, 0 translations were updated and 0 translations were removed.' Below the message, instructions advise reordering languages and setting a default language. It also notes that interface translations are automatically imported when a language is added. At the bottom, there is a table with columns: NAME, DEFAULT, INTERFACE TRANSLATION, and OPERATIONS. The table shows two rows: English (selected as default) and Spanish (with 8057/8059 (99.98%) translations). Buttons for '+ Add language', 'Save configuration', and 'Show row weights' are visible.

NAME	DEFAULT	INTERFACE TRANSLATION	OPERATIONS
English	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	not applicable	<button>Edit</button>
Spanish	<input type="radio"/>	8057/8059 (99.98%)	<button>Edit</button>

5. Follow the steps in [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#) to place the *Language switcher* block in the *Sidebar second* region. This will enable site visitors to switch between languages, once the site has been translated.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org page "Resource Guide: Configuring a Multilingual Site"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Leila Tite](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 10.3. Configuring Content Translation

### Goal

Make *Custom block*, *Custom menu link*, and *Content entity types* translatable. Select specific subtypes and set which fields of these can be translated.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, “####: ##### # ##### ##### #####”](#)
- [#### 10.1, “Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation”](#)

### Site prerequisites

The core Content Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, “Adding a Language”](#).

### Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Content language and translation* ([admin/config/regional/content-language](#)).
2. Under *Custom language settings*, check *Content*, *Custom block* and *Custom menu link* to make these entity types translatable.

## Custom language settings

- Comment
- Contact message
- Content
- Custom block
- Custom menu link
- File
- Shortcut link
- Taxonomy term
- User

**Save configuration**

3. Configuration options appear for *Content*, *Custom block* and *Custom menu link*. Choose the subtypes you want to translate for each entity type. Check *Basic page* for *Content*, *Basic block* for *Custom block* and *Custom menu link* for *Custom menu link*.
4. Verify the settings for the entity types as shown below:

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Default language	The default language for the entity subtype	Site's default language (English)
Show language selector on create and edit pages	Whether or not the language selector should be shown while editing and creating content	Checked

**Default language**

Basic block

Explanation of the language options is found on the [languages list page](#).

Show language selector on create and edit pages

5. Choose the fields that should be translatable for *Basic page* as shown in the table below.

If a field is not translation-dependent, leave it unchecked. Enabling translation for fields that are numbers or dates has use for accountability or implementing workflows.

<b>Field name</b>	<b>Explanation</b>	<b>Example value</b>
Title	The title of the content	Checked
Authored by	The author	Unchecked
Publishing status	Whether the content has been published or not	Checked
Authored on	Date of publishing	Unchecked
Changed	Date of last update	Unchecked
Promoted to front page	Whether the content will be included in some content views	Unchecked
Sticky at top of lists	Whether the content will be displayed first in some content views	Unchecked
URL alias	Nicer URL for the content	Checked
Body	The main content of the page	Checked

Title

Authored by

Publishing status

Authored on

Changed

Promoted to front page

Sticky at top of lists

URL alias

Body

6. Similarly, check the appropriate boxes for translatable fields belonging to *Basic block* and *Custom menu link*.
7. Click *Save configuration*.

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Blog post "Multilingual Drupal 8 tidbits, part 5"](#)
- [Blog post "Multilingual Drupal 8 tidbits, part 17"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 10.4. Translating Content

### Goal

Translate the home page to Spanish.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The Home content item must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

- The core Content Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#).
- The *Basic page* content type must be configured to be translatable. See [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#).

## Steps

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).
- Locate the home page. You can search for it by entering "Home" in the title field.
- Select *Translate* from the dropdown button in the row of the Home content item. The page *Translations of Home* appears.
- Click *Add* in the row *Spanish*.

Translations of Home ★				
View	Edit	Delete	Revisions	Translate
Home > Node				
LANGUAGE	TRANSLATION	SOURCE LANGUAGE	STATUS	OPERATIONS
English (Original language)	Home	n/a	Published	<button>Edit</button>
Spanish	n/a	n/a	Not translated	<button>Add</button>

- Note that the user interface has switched to Spanish. To switch it back to English, remove the first instance of *es* in the browser's URL. For example, if your URL looks like *example.com/es/node/5/translations/add/en/es*, remove the *es* that comes immediately after *example.com*.
- Fill in the fields as shown below. You will have to click and expand *URL path settings* on the right to provide the value for *URL alias*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Title	Translated title of the page	Página principal
Body	Translated body of the page	Bienvenido al mercado de la ciudad - ¡el mercado de agricultores de tu barrio! Horario: Domingos de

Field name	Explanation	Value
		9:00 a 14:00. Desde Abril a Septiembre Lugar: parking del Banco Trust número En el centro de la ciudad
URL path settings > URL alias	Translated address of the webpage	pagina-principal

7. Click *Save and keep published (this translation)*.
8. Go to your site's home page to view the newly translated page.

## Expand your understanding

- Follow the steps above to translate more content on your site.
- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 10.5. Translating Configuration

### Goal

Translate the labels on the Recipes view page into Spanish.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Configuration Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#).
- The Recipes view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) and [#### 9.4, "Duplicating a View"](#).

## Steps

The basic steps for translating any configuration on your site are:

1. Locate the page where the configuration you want to translate is created or edited in the site's primary language. For example, to translate the site name, you need to find the page where you would edit the site name (see [#### 4.2, "Editing Basic Site Information"](#)).
2. Find a link, tab, or button on the page that says "Translate" or something similar. Click this link, tab, or button.
3. Find a button that will let you add a translation in the desired language, and click this button.
4. Enter the translation in the form, and save.

Most configuration is fairly straightforward and intuitive to edit in this manner. Views configuration is an exception, because the translation editing form is nothing like the view editing form, and it is complex and hierarchical rather than being a simple form with just a few fields. As an example of how to translate a view, here are the steps to translate the labels in the Recipes view to Spanish:

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views* (*admin/structure/views*).
2. Locate the Recipes view and click *Translate* from the dropdown button.
3. Click *Add* in the row *Spanish*. The page *Add Spanish translation for Recipes view* appears.
4. Find *Displays > Master Display settings > Recipes default display Options*. Translate the *Display title* from "Recipes" to "Recetas".
5. Find *Displays > Master display settings > Recipes default display options > Exposed form > Reset options*. Translate *Submit button text (Apply)* to "Aplicar". The other buttons and labels in this section do not appear on the Recipes page or block, and do not need to be translated.

6. Find *Displays > Master display settings > Recipes default display options > Filters > (Empty) taxonomy term ID > Find recipes using... Expose*. In the *Label* field, enter "Encontrar recetas usando...".
7. Click *Save translation*.
8. Navigate to the Recipes page and switch to Spanish using the Language switcher block. Verify that the labels have been translated.

## Expand your understanding

- Translate the block display title in the Recent recipes display settings section of the Recipes view.
- Translate the page title in the Vendors view.
- Translate other configuration. Some examples of where to find the translation pages:
  - To translate the site name, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings > Translate system information* (*admin/config/system/site-information/translate*).

- To translate the contact form, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Contact forms (admin/structure/contact)*. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button in the *Website feedback* row.
- To translate the name of a menu, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)*. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the menu whose name you want to translate.
- Menu items within a menu are considered to be content (not configuration); see [\*\*#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"\*\*](#) to enable translation. Once translation is enabled, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)*. Click *Edit menu* in the dropdown button for the menu whose links you want to translate. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the link you want to translate.
- To translate field labels on a content type, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the content type whose field labels you want to edit. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the field whose label you want to edit.
- Translate content. See [\*\*#### 10.4, "Translating Content"\*\*](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

---

# تی اس ی زاسی ش رافس و هعسوت .11 لصف دوخ

## 11.1. Finding Modules

### Goal

Find and evaluate modules on *Drupal.org*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### ## ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [1.2, "#####: ##### #####"](#)

### Steps

1. Go to [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org/project/project_module), and navigate to *Download & Extend > Modules* ([https://www.drupal.org/project/project\\_module](https://www.drupal.org/project/project_module)).
2. Filter your search using the categories on the module search page. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Maintenance status	How actively should the module be maintained?	Actively maintained
Development status	What kind of development should the module undergo?	Any
Module categories	The module's topic area.	Administration
Core compatibility	The version of the core software the module is compatible with.	8.x
Status	Project status: <i>Sandbox projects</i> are experimental	Full projects

Field name	Explanation	Example value
	projects. <i>Full projects</i> have already gone through an approval process, but they can still be in development.	
Search Modules	Search for <i>Admin Toolbar</i> , a module that will be covered in detail later. Alternatively, you can also leave the field blank if you are not sure which module to search for.	Admin Toolbar
Sort by	Order your search results by criteria like <i>Most installed</i> (popular modules that many sites use) or <i>Last release</i> (date of latest version released).	Most installed

46 Modules match your search

Maintenance status	- Any -
Development status	- Any -
Module categories	- Any -
Core compatibility	8.x
Status	Full projects
Stability	All projects
Search Modules	Admin Toolbar
Sort by	Most installed
<b>Search</b>	

- Click *Search*. Search results will appear.

## Admin Toolbar

Posted by eme on 20 April 2015

### What is Admin Toolbar module ?

Admin Toolbar intends to improve the default Drupal Toolbar (the administration menu at the top of your site) to transform it into a drop-down menu, providing a fast access to all administration pages.

The module works on the top of the default toolbar core module and is therefore a very light module and keeps all the toolbar functionalities (shortcut / media responsive).

### How to use Admin Toolbar module ?

Just install it like any other module.

[Read more](#) · Categories: Actively maintained , Under active development , Administration

## Adminimal Admin Toolbar (Drupal 8)

Posted by energee on 19 March 2016

This module is inspired by [Adminimal Administration Menu](#). It provides a minimalist style to [Admin Toolbar](#) for Drupal 8.

Although the "Adminimal" theme provides menu styling, there are some conflicts with Admin toolbar and styling will only be present when the admin theme is set like when editing content.

[Read more](#) · Categories: Actively maintained , Under active development , Administration ,

Theme Enhancements

## Toolbar Themes

Posted by Jeff Burnz on 13 September 2016

Provides themes for the Drupal 8 Toolbar module. The main purpose of this module is to provide compact, minimal themes for the Toolbar and allow the site admin to show or hide tabs and icons.

### Installation

Install like all other modules, then go to: `~/admin/config/toolbar-themes/settings`

[Read more](#) · Categories: Actively maintained , Under active development , Administration

4. To further evaluate a module, click its title in the list of search results to visit its project page.

Some aspects to pay attention to when evaluating modules:

- Project description: The description of the module on its project page should be clear and useful. You should get an idea of its features and requirements.
- Maintenance status: If a module is *Actively maintained*, you can be sure that there will be security updates, bug fixes and feature improvements provided on a regular basis. However, if the module is unmaintained or abandoned, you shouldn't use it.

- Development status: *Under active development* means you can expect new features to be added to the project, but some aspects (for example, API) may still change. *Maintenance fixes only* means that the project is considered feature complete.
- Reported installs, downloads: You can see how many people have downloaded and how many sites use the module. If it's only used by a few sites, it might be a unique solution that not many people need, or it might be a warning sign that you shouldn't use it either.
- Maintainers: When was the last commit (the last time someone updated something on the module) or last release (new version)? If the project has few open issues, a long time since commits/releases might be appropriate, but if it has a lot of open issues and there are no commits/releases, that would be a clue that it might be abandoned.
- Issues: See if there are any open issues, potential problems with the module. Check the *Statistics* to see how regularly issues are responded to.
- Resources: Check if the module has documentation or a README file, that can help you install, configure, explore, and test it.

## Admin Toolbar

[View](#) [Version control](#) [Automated Testing](#)

Posted by [eme](#) on April 20, 2015 at 2:28pm

Admin Toolbar

### What is Admin Toolbar module ?

Admin Toolbar intends to improve the default Drupal Toolbar (the administration menu at the top of your site) to transform it into a drop-down menu, providing a fast access to all administration pages.

The module works on the top of the default toolbar core module and is therefore a very light module and keeps all the toolbar functionalities (shortcut / media responsive).

### How to use Admin Toolbar module ?

Just install it like any other module.

### What more?

The module provides also a submodule called "Admin Toolbar Extra Tools" adding extra links like what does Admin Menu module for Drupal 7 (flush caches, run CRON, etc...).

Please provide feedback and ideas!

### Complementary modules :

[Toolbar Menu](#) allows you to add easily any menu to your toolbar and plays nicely with Admin toolbar making them dropdown menus.

[Toolbar Anti-flicker](#) removes the impact of the admin toolbar sub-menu on the rest of the page.

[Coffee](#) is a good module to look for admin paths.

[Adminimal Admin toolbar](#) provides a black theming, recommended for the [Adminimal theme](#).

### Supporting organizations:

[emerya](#)

### Project Information

Maintenance status: [Actively maintained](#)

Development status: [Under active development](#)

Module categories: [Administration](#)

Reported installs: **14,813** sites currently report using this module. [View usage statistics](#).

Downloads: 81,993

Automated tests: Enabled

Last modified: August 9, 2016

shield [Stable releases receive coverage from the Drupal Security Team](#).

Look for the shield icon below.

### Maintainers for Admin Toolbar

[romainj](#) - 29 commits

last: 5 days ago, first: 4 months ago

[eme](#) - 11 commits

last: 3 weeks ago, first: 8 months ago

[matio89](#) - 23 commits

last: 2 months ago, first: 1 year ago

[View all committers](#)

[View commits](#)

### Issues for Admin Toolbar

To avoid duplicates, please search before submitting a new issue.

[Search](#)

[Advanced search](#)

[All issues](#)

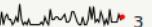
**15 open, 138 total**

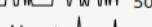
[Bug report](#)

**6 open, 78 total**

[Subscribe via e-mail](#)

### Statistics

New issues  3

Response rate  50 %

1st response  6 hours

Open bugs  6

Participants  7

2 year graph, updates weekly

### Resources

[Read license](#)

## Expand your understanding

[#11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

## 11.2. Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode

### Goal

Put your site in maintenance mode to allow users with the right permissions to use the site while users without this permission are presented with a message that the site is under maintenance.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

### Steps

#### Enabling maintenance mode

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode* (`admin/config/development/maintenance`). The *Maintenance mode* page appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Put site into maintenance mode	Enable the maintenance mode	Checked
Message to display when in maintenance mode	The information that is shown to website visitors when the mode is enabled. Variables such as @site can be used in the message	@site is currently under maintenance but should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

3. Click *Save configuration*.
4. Verify that the site is in maintenance mode by accessing it from another browser where you aren't logged in. If you are not able to verify, try clearing the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

**Anytown Farmers Market**

Farm Fresh Food

**Site under maintenance**

Anytown Farmers Market is currently under maintenance. We should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

## Disabling maintenance mode

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode* (*admin/config/development/maintenance*). The *Maintenance mode* page appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Put site into maintenance mode	Disable the maintenance mode	Unchecked
Message to display when in maintenance mode	No message required while disabling. You can leave the field blank.	

3. Click *Save configuration*.
4. Verify that the site is no longer in maintenance mode by accessing it from another browser where you aren't logged in. If you are not able to verify, try clearing the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

The screenshot shows the homepage of the Anytown Farmers Market website. At the top left is a circular logo with a sun, clouds, and a small farm building, surrounded by the text "ANYTOWN FARMERS MARKET" and "FARM FRESH FOOD". To the right of the logo is the text "Anytown Farmers Market" and "Farm Fresh Food". On the far right is a "Log in" link. Below the header is a navigation bar with four buttons: "Home", "About", "Recipes", and "Vendors". The main content area has a yellow background. It features a heading "Home" and a welcome message: "Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!". Below this are three lines of information: "Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September", "Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown", and "Hours and location". To the right of this section is a box titled "Language" with "English" and "Español" options. Another box titled "New recipes" shows two images: one of carrots and another of a salad, with the labels "Fresh Carrots" and "Green Salad".

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 11.3. Downloading and Installing a Module from [Drupal.org](#)

### Goal

Download and install the [contributed Admin Toolbar module](#), which allows you to easily browse through the administration section of the website.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### ##### #####"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- If you want to install modules via the website, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### ##### #####"](#).

### Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install a contributed module. If you are installing a custom module rather than a contributed module, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to download and unpack the module files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#). If you are installing a contributed module with external dependencies that are managed by Composer, follow the steps for downloading in [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#). In either of these cases, then continue here with step <sup>7</sup> in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. On the *Admin toolbar* project page on drupal.org ([https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar)), scroll to the *Downloads* section at the bottom of the page.
2. Copy the address of the *tar.gz* link. Depending on your device and browser, you might do this by right clicking and selecting *Copy link address*.

### Downloads

#### Recommended releases

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.16	<a href="#">tar.gz (55.55 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (62.65 KB)</a>	2016-Jul-28

#### Development releases

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.x-dev	<a href="#">tar.gz (16.89 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (26.26 KB)</a>	2016-Aug-19

[View all releases](#)

3. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend (admin/modules)*. The *Extend* page appears.
4. Click *Install new module*. The *Install new module* page appears.

5. In the field *Install from a URL*, paste the copied download link. This value could look like this: [https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/admin\\_toolbar-8.x-1.14.tar.gz](https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/admin_toolbar-8.x-1.14.tar.gz)

6. Click *Install* to upload and unpack the new module on the server. The files are being downloaded to the *modules* directory.
7. Click *Enable newly added modules* to return to the *Extend* page. If you used the manual uploading procedure, start with this step, and reach the *Extend* page by using the *Manage* administrative menu and navigating to *Extend (admin/modules)*.
8. Locate and check *Admin toolbar*.
9. Click *Install* to turn on the new module.

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the module you want to install, which is the last segment of the module's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is [https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar), the project name is "admin\_toolbar".
2. Run the following Drush commands, giving the project name (for example, `admin_toolbar`) as a parameter:

```
drush dl admin_toolbar  
drush en admin_toolbar
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- Verify that the [\*contributed Admin Toolbar module\*](#) is working by browsing through the menu in the administration section.
- Install and configure the [\*contributed Pathauto module\*](#) so that content pages in your site get nice URLs by default. See [\*#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"\*](#) for more on URLs.
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [\*#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"\*](#).

## Additional resources

- [\*Drupal.org community documentation page "Contributed modules"\*](#)

- ["Download and Extend" page on Drupal.org](#)
- [Admin Toolbar module on Drupal.org](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 11.4. Finding Themes

### Goal

Find and evaluate themes on *Drupal.org*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- ["1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### ## ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- ["1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

### Steps

1. Go to <https://www.drupal.org>, and navigate to *Download & Extend > Themes* ([https://www.drupal.org/project/project\\_theme](https://www.drupal.org/project/project_theme)).
2. Filter your search using the categories on the theme search page. For example, you might use these filters:

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Maintenance status	How actively is the theme maintained? If a theme is actively maintained, you can expect bug fixes and improvements on a regular basis.	Actively maintained
Development status	What kind of development is the theme undergoing? If you select <i>Under active development</i> , you can expect	Any

Field name	Explanation	Example value
	new features to be added, and some aspects may still change. If you select <i>Maintenance fixes only</i> , it means that the theme is considered complete.	
Core compatibility	The Drupal version the theme is compatible with.	8.x
Status	<i>Sandbox projects</i> are experimental projects. <i>Full projects</i> have already gone through an approval process, but they can still be in development.	Full projects
Search Themes	Search by search term in the theme's description.	-
Sort by	Order your search results by criteria like <i>Most installed</i> (popular themes that many sites use) or <i>Last release</i> (date of latest version released).	Most installed

179 Themes match your search

Maintenance status	Actively maintained
Development status	- Any -
Core compatibility	8.x
Status	Full projects
Stability	All projects
Search Themes	<input type="text"/>
Sort by	Most installed
<input type="button" value="Search"/>	

3. Click *Search*. Search results will appear.

## Bootstrap

Posted by [wundo](#) on 18 May 2008

**“**Sleek, intuitive, and powerful mobile first front-end framework for faster and easier web development. Bootstrap has become one of the most popular front-end frameworks and open source projects in the world.

This base theme bridges the gap between Drupal and the [Bootstrap Framework](#).

### Features

- [jsDelivr CDN](#) for "out-of-the-box" styling and faster page load times.
- [Bootswatch](#) theme support, if using the CDN.
- Glyphicons support via [Icon API](#).
- Extensive integration and template/preprocessor overrides for most of the [Bootstrap Framework](#) CSS, Components and JavaScript
- Theme settings to further enhance the Drupal Bootstrap integration:
  - [Breadcrumbs](#)
  - [Navbar](#)
  - [Popovers](#)
  - [Tooltips](#)
  - [Wells](#) (per region)

### Documentation

Visit the project's [official documentation site](#) or the markdown files inside the `./docs` directory.

### Supported modules

#### Drupal 8

- [Bootstrap Layouts](#)

#### Drupal 7

- [Bootstrap Core](#)
- [jQuery Update](#)
- [Icon API](#)
- [Picture](#)
- [Views \(partial support\)](#)
- [Webform \(partial support\)](#)

### 5 Year Evolution (source)

<https://youtu.be/Cvq6MPJp2dI>

4. To further evaluate a theme, click its title in the list of search results to visit its project page.

Some aspects to pay attention to while evaluating themes:

- Introduction: The description of the theme on its project page should be clear and useful. A screenshot of the theme helps your evaluation as well.
- Downloads: The theme should be available for your version of the core software. Pay attention to the color-coding: Themes marked green are recommended to be used on

live sites, the ones marked yellow should be carefully evaluated before use, and the ones marked red are only recommended for testing.

- Project Information: Check the theme's maintenance and development status, and how frequently it's downloaded and installed.
- Issues: See if there are any open issues or potential problems with the theme.
- Resources: Check if the theme has documentation.

## Expand your understanding

- [\*\*#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"\*\*](#)

### Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#).

## 11.5. Downloading and Installing a Theme from *Drupal.org*

### Goal

Download and install a theme from *Drupal.org*.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [\*\*#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"\*\*](#)
- [\*\*#### 3.2, "#": #####: #####: #####"\*\*](#)

### Site prerequisites

If you want to install via the website, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [\*\*#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"\*\*](#) for instructions on installing modules.

If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [\*\*#### 3.2, "#": #####: #####: #####"\*\*](#).

## Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install a contributed theme. If you are installing a custom theme rather than a contributed theme, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to download and unpack the theme files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#). If you are installing a contributed theme with external dependencies that are managed by Composer, follow the steps for downloading in [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#). In either of these cases, then continue here with step <sup>7</sup> in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

### Using the administrative interface

1. On the theme's project page on drupal.org (for example, <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>), scroll to the *Downloads* section at the bottom of the page.
2. Right-click *tar.gz* to copy the address.

#### Downloads

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.3	<a href="#">tar.gz (437.31 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (486.26 KB)</a>	2016-May-09
7.x-2.6	<a href="#">tar.gz (411.91 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (441.6 KB)</a>	2015-Nov-11
7.x-1.4	<a href="#">tar.gz (386.35 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (403.15 KB)</a>	2015-Nov-11
<b>Development releases</b>		
8.x-1.x-dev	<a href="#">tar.gz (437.31 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (486.27 KB)</a>	2016-Apr-27
7.x-2.x-dev	<a href="#">tar.gz (411.92 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (441.62 KB)</a>	2016-Feb-11
<a href="#">View all releases</a>		

3. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*. The *Appearance* page appears.
4. Click *Install new theme*. The *Install new theme* page appears.

**Install new theme** ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#)

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: `zip tar tgz gz bz2`.

**Install from a URL**

For example: <http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz>

**Or**

**Upload a module or theme archive to install**

No file selected.

For example: `name.tar.gz` from your local computer

5. In the field *Install from a URL*, paste the copied download link. This value could look like <https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/mayo-8.x-1.3.tar.gz>.
6. Click *Install* to upload and unpack the new theme on the server. The files are being downloaded to the *themes* directory.
7. Click *Install newly added themes* to return to the *Appearance* page. If you used the manual uploading procedure, start with this step, and reach the *Appearance* page by using the *Manage* administrative menu and navigating to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*.
8. Locate the new theme under *Uninstalled themes* and click *Install and set as default* to use it. All non-administrative pages on the site will now use this new theme.



## Mayo 8.x-1.3

Simple but fully customizable and colorable responsive layout theme.

[Install](#) | [Install and set as default](#)

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the theme you want to install, which is the last segment of the theme's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>, the project name is `mayo`.
2. Run the following Drush commands, giving the project name (for example, `mayo`) as a parameter:
 

```
drush dl mayo
drush en mayo
drush config-set system.theme default mayo
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance* (`admin/appearance`) and uninstall any themes that you are not using.
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)

- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#), and [Boris Doesborgh](#).

# 11.6. Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files

## Goal

Manually download module or theme files and upload them to your site, if the website or Drush methods for installing or updating a module or theme do not work, or if you are placing a custom-written module or theme.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)

## Site prerequisites

You need to be facing any of the following to perform the manual download described in this topic:

- File permission issues
- FTP permission issues
- You created a custom module/theme or received its files from someone
- You could not successfully complete the instructions in [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), or [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

Skip this topic if none of the above applies to you.

## Steps

If you are installing a module or theme from *Drupal.org*, follow the downloading instructions, and then the uploading/unpacking instructions. If you created the module or theme, skip the downloading step. Instead, create an archive file (that you know how to extract on the server) and proceed with the steps in uploading/unpacking, using whatever method is appropriate for the way you initially created the archive file.

### Downloading the files

1. Open the module or theme project page on drupal.org; for example, the *Admin toolbar* page ([https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar)).
2. Scroll to the *Downloads* section near the bottom of the page.

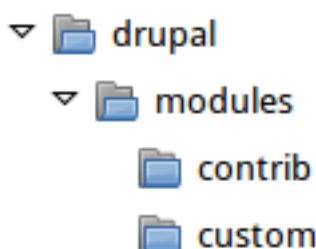
#### Downloads

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.19	<a href="#">tar.gz (17.07 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (27.02 KB)</a>	2017-Apr-06
<b>Development releases</b>		
8.x-1.x-dev	<a href="#">tar.gz (19.49 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (29.81 KB)</a>	2017-Jun-11
<a href="#">View all releases</a>		

3. Click *tar.gz* to download the file to your computer.

### Uploading the files to your site and unpacking them

1. If you are adding a new module or theme, create subdirectories in your top-level *modules* and *themes* directories (if they don't already exist). Typically, people make a *contrib* subdirectory for contributed modules and themes that are downloaded from *Drupal.org*, and a *custom* subdirectory for modules and themes that they created. Your *modules* directory might look like this:



2. If you are replacing an existing module or theme with an updated version, put the site into maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
3. If you are replacing an existing module or theme with an updated version, find and delete all the existing files and directories for the existing module or theme. Modules are normally located in directories under the top-level *modules* directory, and themes are normally located in directories under the top-level *themes* directory.
4. Upload the *.tar.gz* file (or whatever archive you created) to your site. Place it in either the same location from which you deleted the directory (if replacing an existing module or theme) or the appropriate subdirectory of *modules* or *themes* (if adding a new module or theme).
5. Extract the files from the *.tar.gz* archive (or whatever archive you created), making a subdirectory in the same location as the archive file. If you do not have terminal access, or your hosting server is not running Linux, your hosting control panel's file manager should provide a way to extract the files. If you have terminal access to your hosting server (running Linux) and you are using a tar.gz file, you can use a command like:  

```
tar -xzf admin_toolbar-8.x-1.17.tar.gz
```
6. Delete the compressed file from the server, unless your unpacking method already deleted it.
7. Refer to [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), or [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#) to complete the installation or update of the module or theme. Start at the step after the automatic download has been completed.

## Expand your understanding

- If you work with multiple environments (for example, a local development site and a production site) you will have to repeat the steps on each environment, or re-clone the environment. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- If you added a new theme, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Appearance* (*admin/appearance*) and uninstall the old theme.

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Updating modules"](#)

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Installing contributed modules \(Drupal 8\)"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Installing themes"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Marc Isaacson](#).

## 11.7. Concept: Development Sites

### What are Development Sites?

Development Sites are different copies of the same site used for developing, updating, and testing a site without risking the integrity of the live site.

An example deployment workflow for site building will usually include the sites mentioned below:

#### Local environment

The development process starts with developers working on new features, bug fixes, theming, and configuration in their local environment.

#### Development site

Developers push the changes they've been working on to the development site. For a team of more than one developer, version control is usually used. Git is a version control system that tracks your files for any changes. You can then commit those changes to a repository. Using Git allows team members to work on the same site without overriding each other's work. It also makes it possible to easily roll back to previous stages of the development.

#### Staging site

The staging site can be used for testing, or presenting the changes to the client for approval. QA (Quality Assurance) and UAT (User Acceptance Testing) are most often carried out on the staging site. It is recommended to have live content on both the development and staging sites, so that you can test how the new features will work with the existing content.

#### Production site

The live site on the web available to visitors. It contains new features that have been proven safe to go live.

Based on the project's size, scope, requirements, or stakeholders, stages from the above workflow can be removed, or additional stages can be added. For example, a testing site before staging can be added to separate testing and user acceptance processes.

## Related topics

- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 2.6, "####: ##### #### # #####"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Introduction to Git"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Diána Lakatos](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 11.8. Making a Development Site

### Goal

Make a copy of a site that you can use to develop new features and test updates on.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- You have a live, developed site that you would like to make a copy of for development purposes.
- If you want to use Drush for some of the steps in this task, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "####: ##### #### # #####"](#).

### Steps

1. Follow the steps in [#### 3.3, "##### #### # #### # ##"](#), so that you have hosting set up for your development site, you know where the web root is for your development site, and you have an empty database and database user for your development site to use.
2. Make a database dump file from your live site's database. Try one of the following methods:

- If you are using MySQL as your database, and your live site's server has phpMyAdmin installed (it is available from many hosting control panels), use the *Export* tab in phpMyAdmin to export in *SQL* format. Using *gzip* compression on the output file is suggested, to reduce the file size.
- If you are using MySQL and have access to the command line, use this command (substituting in your site's database name, user name, and password):

```
mysqldump -u USERNAME -p'PASSWORD' DATABASENAME > BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- If you prefer to use Drush, use this command:

```
drush sql-dump > BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- Use the [\*contributed Backup and Migrate module\*](#) from within your live site. See [\*#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"\*](#) for instructions on installing contributed modules.

You now have a database dump stored in the file *BACkUPFILE.sql*. For security reasons, avoid storing this file on your hosting server anywhere under the Drupal site root. This will prevent others from getting a copy of your database.

3. Copy all of the files from the web root of your live site to the web root of your development site.
4. Edit the *sites/default/settings.php* file under your development site's top-level directory in a plain-text editor. Find the lines near the end that contain the database name, database username, and database password, and update them to the information about the development site database you set up. The lines look something like this (before editing):

```
$databases['default']['default'] = array (
  'database' => 'live_site_database_name',
  'username' => 'live_site_database_username',
  'password' => 'live_site_database_password',
```

5. Check whether your *settings.php* file has the following setting; if yes, then you will need to edit this to point to your development site URL instead of your production site URL:

```
$settings['trusted_host_patterns']
```

6. Import the database dump file you created, into the development site's database. Try one of the following methods:
  - If you are using MySQL as your database, and your live site's server has PHPMyAdmin installed (it is available from many hosting control panels), use the *Import* tab in PHPMyAdmin. You may find that you have to restart the import a few times, if your database was large.

- If you are using MySQL and have access to the command line, use this command (substituting in your site's database name, user name, and password; if you made a gzip-compressed backup file, you will also need to uncompress it first):

```
mysql -u USERNAME -pPASSWORD DATABASE_NAME < BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- If you prefer to use Drush, use this command:

```
drush sql-query --file=BACKUPFILE.sql
```

7. If your development and live sites need to have different configuration, then you have to use configuration overrides in the *settings.php* file. The *\$config* variable will help you maintain override values separately from the standard configuration data. For instance, you might want the site name to be "Anytown Farmers Market" on the production site, but "Development Site for Anytown Farmers Market" on the development site. To do that, you could have the production value in the site configuration (in the database), and on the development site, in the *settings.php* file, you would need to have:

```
$config['system.site']['name'] = "Development Site for Anytown Farmers Market";
```

## Expand your understanding

- Verify that the development site is working correctly.
- Log in to the development site as an administrator, and clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).
- [#### 11.10, "Deploying New Site Features"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Backing up a site"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Create a Test Site"](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 11.9. Using Composer and Git to Download Files

### Goal

Use Composer and/or Git to download files and dependencies in the core software, or in add-on modules and themes.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 3.2, "####: ##### #### # ####"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

### Site prerequisites

If you want to use Git or Composer, they must be installed either on a local development server or your live site. See [#### 3.2, "####: ##### #### # ####"](#).

### Steps

If you are unable to install the Git or Composer tools on your live server, after following the steps in any of the sections below on your local server, you will need to transfer any updated or added files to your live server. The recommended procedure is to make an archive or zip file of the new and changed files, transfer the archive to your live server, and extract it there. If you are using Composer, make sure to check for updates and additions to the following files, in the root of your installation:

- *vendor* directory
- *autoload.php*
- *composer.json*
- *composer.lock*

### Using Git to download a project

Follow these steps if you want to download the development version of the core software, or of a contributed module or theme, from the project's Git version control repository:

1. In a command-line window, change to one level above the directory where you want the files to reside. For the core software, this would be your web root. For an add-on module,

- this would be the *modules* directory, or a sub-directory like *contrib* under the *modules* directory.
2. Locate the page for the project that you want to download on *Drupal.org*; for example, <https://www.drupal.org/project/drupal> for the core software, or [https://www.drupal.org/project/admin\\_toolbar](https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar) for the contributed Admin Toolbar module.
  3. Click the *Version control* link near the top of the page, which opens up a page giving Git commands for this project.
  4. Copy the `git clone` command under *Setting up repository for the first time*, and paste it into your command line. For example, it might be:  
`git clone --branch 8.2.x https://git.drupal.org/project/drupal.git`
  5. This will create a directory named with the short name of the project (*drupal* in this example), and download the required files into that directory. If necessary, rename the directory.
  6. If you downloaded the *drupal* project (the core software), follow the instructions below to download its external dependencies.
  7. Later on, you can change to the created directory and run the command `git pull` to update the files to the latest version from the Git repository for the project.

## Using Composer to download external core dependencies

Follow these steps if you downloaded the core software files using Git, which does not include the external dependencies:

1. Change to the core software's root directory.
2. Run the command `composer install` at the command line. The external dependencies will be downloaded.

## Using Composer to download the core software

Follow these steps if you have not yet downloaded or installed the core software, and you want to use Composer to download both the core software and its external dependencies:

1. At the command line, change to one level above the directory where you want the software to reside.
2. Enter this command, where `my_site_name` is the directory you want to create:

```
composer create-project drupal/drupal my_site_name
```

## Using Composer to download a module or theme

Follow these steps if you have already downloaded the core software, and you want to use Composer to add a contributed module or theme (usually because it has external dependencies that need to be downloaded with Composer):

1. If you have not already done so, tell Composer about the download location for contributed modules and themes, by entering this command from the root of your site installation:

```
composer config repositories.drupal composer https://packages.drupal.org/8
```

2. If you have not already done so, you can optionally override the default location where Composer will put downloaded modules and themes. For example, typically you would want contributed modules to go in a *contrib* subdirectory of the top-level *modules* directory, instead of the default location of *modules*. To make this change, edit the *composer.json* file at the root level in your site installation. Find the line that says

```
"extra": {
```

and add these lines following that line:

```
"installer-paths": {  
    "modules/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-module"],  
    "modules/custom/{$name}": ["type:drupal-custom-module"],  
    "profiles/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-profile"],  
    "themes/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-theme"],  
    "themes/custom/{$name}": ["type:drupal-custom-theme"],  
    "libraries/{$name}": ["type:drupal-library"],  
    "drush/{$name}": ["type:drupal-drush"]  
},
```

3. Each time you want to add a contributed module or theme, determine the project's short name. This is the last part of the URL of the project page; for example, the Geofield module, at <https://www.drupal.org/project/geofield>, has short name `geofield`.
4. To download the contributed module or theme, along with its external dependencies, enter the following command at the root of your site (substituting the short name of the module or theme for `geofield`):

```
composer require drupal/geofield
```

## Using Composer to update a project's files

Follow these steps to update the files for the core software or a contributed module or theme, after having already started to manage dependencies with Composer:

1. Determine the short name of the project you want to update. For the core software, it is `drupal`. For contributed modules and themes, it is the last part of the URL of the project

- page; for example, the Geofield module, at <https://www.drupal.org/project/geofield>, has short name `geofield`.
2. Determine how to enter the version number you want to update to. For example, for version 8.x-1.7 of a contributed module, you would enter just the `1.7`, and for the core software version `8.3.1`, you would enter `8.3.1`.
  3. Enter the following command at the root of your site (substituting the short name of the module or theme for `geofield` and the correct version number):  
`composer require drupal/geofield:1.7`

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Using Composer with Drupal"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) from ["Using Composer with Drupal"](#), copyright 2000-2017 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 11.10. Deploying New Site Features

### Goal

Copy a view that you have created in a local development site to the production site.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 11.11, "Synchronizing Configuration Versions"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- The core Configuration Manager module must be installed in both the development and production sites. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.

- The Vendor content type must exist in both the development and production sites, with the same fields. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).
- The Vendors view must exist in the development site but not the production site. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#).

## Steps

1. Open the local development site.
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration* > *Development* > *Configuration synchronization* > *Export* > *Single item* (*admin/config/development/configuration/single/export*). The *Single export* page appears.
3. Select *View* from the *Configuration type* list.
4. Select *Vendors* from the *Configuration name* list. The configuration appears in the textarea.
5. Copy the configuration from the textarea.

```

uuid: bf3b16f1-4807-4899-9c76-94dd2f97b3c7
langcode: en
status: true
dependencies:
  config:
    - core.entity_view_mode.node.teaser
    - field.storage.node.body
    - field.storage.node.field_main_image
    - image.style.medium
    - node.type.vendor
    - system.menu.main
  module:
    - image
    - node
    - text
    - user
id: vendors
label: Vendors
module: views
description: ''
tag: ''
base_table: node_field_data
base_field: nid
core: 8.x
  
```

6. Open the production site.
7. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronizationImport > Single item* (*admin/config/development/configuration*). The *Import* page appears.
8. Select *View* from the *Configuration type* list.
9. Paste the configuration in the textarea.
10. Click *Import*. The confirmation page appears.
11. Click *Confirm*.

12. Verify that the view was imported by navigating in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Views*.

## Expand your understanding

The steps in this topic show how to export and import a single configuration item. However, often if you develop functionality on a development website and want to transfer it to your production site, you will need to transfer multiple configuration items. For instance, if you developed a new content type with fields, you would need to transfer several configuration items for each field, one for the content type itself, and possibly multiple view mode and form mode items, and they would have to be transferred in the right order. Getting this right can be both tedious and difficult.

As an alternative, you can export and import the complete configuration of the site. For this, you would need a local development site that is a clone of the production site (see [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)), and then you can follow the steps in [#### 11.11, "Synchronizing Configuration Versions"](#) to synchronize configuration between development and production sites.

Another alternative is to use the [contributed Features module](#), which allows exporting and importing bundled functionality (for example, all the configuration for a photo gallery).

Finally, if you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

## Related concepts

- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [#### 2.6, "#####: #####: #####: #####: #####"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

# 11.11. Synchronizing Configuration Versions

## Goal

Synchronize the configuration between a development and live site.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 3.3, "##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)

## Site prerequisites

- You must have a development copy of your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- The core Configuration Manager module must be installed on both the development and production sites. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on how to install core modules.
- You must have changed configuration on either the production or development site (the *source site*), and want to synchronize the changes to the other site (the *destination site*). As an example, you can develop a new content type, fields, and views on your development site, and when it is all working correctly, deploy the changes to the live site.
- All configuration that should not be synchronized between the source and destination sites must be stored in configuration overrides in the *settings.php* file rather than in the database. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).

## Steps

1. In the source site, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronization > Export (admin/config/development/configuration/full/export)*.
2. Click *Export*. Your site will generate an archive of the full site configuration. Save the file on your local computer.

3. In the destination site, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronization > Import* (*admin/config/development/configuration/full/import*).
4. Browse to find the downloaded configuration archive, and click *Upload*. Your configuration archive will be uploaded to the destination site, and you will be redirected to the configuration *Synchronize* page (*admin/config/development/configuration*) with a message saying your files were uploaded.
5. Verify that the differences shown on the page are what you expect. You may see configuration items that have been added, deleted, or changed; for changed items, you can click *View differences* to see what the changes are.
6. When you are satisfied, click *Import all* to import the configuration changes.

## Expand your understanding

- If the changes you have made involve only one configuration item (such as one view), you can use the single configuration export/import feature to deploy the change between sites. See [#### 11.10, "Deploying New Site Features"](#).
- After the step where you export the full configuration from the source site, you might also want to unpack the archive and commit it to a version control system, such as Git, to track changes in your site configuration. See [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### ###### #####"](#).

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

---

# تالکشم لح وی ریگشی پ. 12. لصف

## 12.1. Concept: Cache

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.1, #####: ##### # # ##### ## ##### ##### ###### #####](#)

### What is the page cache?

The software that runs your site, on each page request, must perform calculations and retrieve data from the database, in order to compose the page that is sent to the web browser or other application that is accessing the site. These calculations take time, which can mean that your page load time is longer than would be desirable.

There are several ways that page load time can be sped up, including installing software on the server. The system includes the core Internal Page Cache and Dynamic Page Cache modules, which do not require any additional server software; they use a *database cache*

mechanism to speed up your site. The way these modules work is that during page calculations, intermediate results and the final page output are stored in a special database area (known as the *cache*). Then the next time a compatible request is made, intermediate

or final results, as appropriate, can be retrieved and used rather than redoing the entire calculation. In addition, when content or data that affects a particular calculation is updated, the affected cached data is removed from the cache, forcing that part of the calculation to be redone the next time it is needed.

These caching modules normally work reasonably well, and offer at least some speed-up for most sites. However, sometimes the page cache can have problems, such as:

- Corrupted data in the cache, leading to garbled or incorrect page output
- Old data remaining in the cache too long, leading to outdated page output
- Insufficient caching, leading to slow page loads

### What other data is cached?

Independent of whether the two page cache modules are installed on your site, the software that your site runs will still cache the output of many internal calculations. The core systems that cache data include:

- The theme system caches information in the database cache about which template files are used to render various types of data. If you are developing a new theme and add a new template file, you'll need to clear this cache to have your theme file recognized.

- CSS and JavaScript files can optionally be optimized and compressed (depending on your site settings). If so, the compressed versions are stored in the file system so that they don't have to be re-optimized too often. If you are developing a module or theme, you may need to either turn off or clear this file cache to have changes to CSS or JavaScript files be recognized.
- The system locates certain low-level PHP functions and classes, such as *hook implementations* and *plugin classes*, from your installed modules and stores information about which module has which functionality. If you are developing a new module or adding features to an existing module, you may need to clear this cache to have your new features be recognized.

## Related topics

If you have problems with your site, the first thing to try to fix it is usually to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#) for more information.

## Additional resources

Learn about additional caching and performance optimization methods in the [Drupal.org community documentation page "Caching to improve performance"](#).

### Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 12.2. Clearing the Cache

### Goal

Clear or rebuild your site's internal caches to ensure they are up-to-date with the most recent data, using the user interface or Drush.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#)
- [#### 3.2, #####: ##### #### # #####"](#)

## Site prerequisites

If you want to use Drush to clear the cache, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, #####: ##### ##### #####](#).

## Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to clear the cache.

### Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Performance* (`admin/config/development/performance`).
2. Click *Clear all caches*.
3. A message saying the cache has been cleared appears at the top of the page.

### Using Drush

You can use one of two commands:

- Use the command `drush cache-rebuild` to clear and rebuild all cached data for a site. After running this command, you will see the output message "Cache rebuild complete."
- Use the command `drush cc` to see a list of individual caches and then choose the specific cache you would like to clear. Running this command should produce output like the following:

```
> drush cc
Enter a number to choose which cache to clear.
[0] : Cancel
[1] : drush
[2] : theme-registry
[3] : menu
[4] : css-js
[5] : block
[6] : module-list
[7] : theme-list
[8] : render
[9] : views
```

Choose a cache to clear by entering the number associated with that cache. Press "Enter" to continue.

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Clearing or rebuilding Drupal's cache"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Joe Shindelar](#) and [Jack Haas](#) from "[Clearing or rebuilding Drupal's cache](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 12.3. Concept: Data Backups

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### ## ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 3.3, "##### ##### ##### ##### #####"](#)

### What is a site backup?

If something happens to the computer (or computers) that your site and its database are running on, or if you lose access to this computer, you could lose some or all of your site's data. You could also lose data if your site is hacked, or if someone with administrative privileges on your site deletes or alters data mistakenly from the administrative interface. In order to prevent scenarios like this from being permanent, expensive data losses, it is important to make regular backups of your site's data, and to store them in a location that is separate from the computer where your site is running.

The frequency with which you should make data backups, and how many backups you should keep, depends on how frequently your site is changing. If you have a very large amount of content on your site that is being added to or updated many times per day, you would want to make more frequent backups than you would for a site that changes rarely. Also consider that some time could pass between when a data problem occurs and when you notice that it is a problem, so storing a sequence of backups (so that you can go back to the last known good data and retrieve that), rather than overwriting a single backup repeatedly, is a good practice.

Another consideration is that whatever format you store your backups in, it is a good idea to verify that you can actually retrieve lost data from your backups. You might want to test several possible data loss scenarios, and make sure that your data can be restored to the site in all cases.

In order to make a complete backup of your site, you will need to make copies of the following:

- The data in the *sites* directory, including the *sites/default/settings.php* file.
- The data in your site's database. A few tables can be truncated, such as those storing the temporary data cache and user login session information, but it is always safe to back up the entire database.
- Uploaded files, such as images and other attachments. The location of these files is configurable; the standard location is the *sites/default/files* directory under your site root.

In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > File system (admin/config/media/file-system)* to check the file upload locations; to change them, you'll need to edit your *settings.php* file.

- Modules, themes and any other software files you have customized. You can find customized modules and themes in the *modules* and *themes* directories respectively. Some people prefer to back up all software files, including core files and contributed modules and themes (which you could recover by downloading them again from the source), rather than trying to pick out specific files that definitely need to be backed up.

You can perform a test to confirm whether your backup has been done right by making a development copy of the site (see [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)).

## Related topics

- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Backing up a site"](#)
- The [contributed Backup and Migrate module](#), which can be used to set up automatic backups of the database and uploaded files.

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 12.4. Concept: Log

### What is a Log?

Your site captures system events in a log to be reviewed by an authorized individual at a later time. The log is a list of recorded events containing usage data, performance data, errors, warnings, and operational information. It is vital to check the log on a regular basis as it is often the only way to tell what is going on.

You can find your site's recent log messages in the *Manage* administrative menu by navigating to *Reports > Recent log messages (admin/reports/dblog)*.

**Recent log messages ☆**

[View](#) [Delete](#)

Home » Administration » Reports

The Database Logging module logs system events in the Drupal database. Monitor your site or debug site problems on this page.

**FILTER LOG MESSAGES**

Type	Severity	Filter
block_content	Emergency	
content	Alert	
cron	Critical	
language	Error	
locale	Warning	
node	Notice	
system	Info	
taxonomy	Debug	

TYPE	DATE	MESSAGE	USER	OPERATIONS
user	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Session opened for admin.	admin	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Cron run completed.	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Execution of update_cron() took 282.93ms.	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of update_cron(), execution of...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of system_cron(), execution of node...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of node_cron(), execution of locale...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of locale_cron(), execution of file...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of file_cron(), execution of field...	Anonymous (not verified)	

### Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) from "[Reports](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

## 12.5. Concept: Status Report

### What is a Status Report?

The status report is a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on *Drupal.org*'s support forums and project issue queues or when asking for help on other channels.

You can find the status report in the *Manage* administrative menu by navigating to *Reports > Status report (admin/reports/status)*.

Status report ☆	
<a href="#">Home</a> » <a href="#">Administration</a> » <a href="#">Reports</a>	
Here you can find a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on <a href="#">Drupal.org</a> 's support forums and project issue queues. Before filing a support request, ensure that your web server meets the <a href="#">system requirements</a> .	
Drupal	8.2.0-dev
Access to update.php	Protected
Configuration files	Protected
Cron maintenance tasks	Last run 1 minute 5 seconds ago You can <a href="#">run cron manually</a> . To run cron from outside the site, go to <a href="#">example.com/cron</a> <a href="#">/V_A2qVbam3F_hvAxbBG0hHuOzorCEf3fHRbi43bWdecHN0YY9RZ_Yy5aUC_1nsiHoKb_HRjOlq?absolute=1</a>
Database system	MySQL, MariaDB, Percona Server, or equivalent
Database system version	5.5.47-Ubuntu0.14.04.1
✖ Database updates	Out of date Some modules have database schema updates to install. You should run the <a href="#">database update script</a> immediately.
⚠ Drupal core update status	Unknown release date (version 8.1.8 available) There was a problem checking <a href="#">available updates</a> for Drupal. See the <a href="#">available updates</a> page for more information and to install your missing updates.
Entity/field definitions	Up to date
File system	Writable ( <a href="#">public</a> download method)
GD library	2.1.1-dev
GD library PNG support	2.1.1-dev

### Related topics

[#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) from "[Reports](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

---

# ی را ده گن و تی نم ا. 13. ل ص ف

## 13.1. Concept: Cron

### What are cron tasks?

To ensure that your site and its modules continue to function well, a group of administrative operations should be run periodically. These operations are called *cron* tasks. Examples of cron tasks are: checking for module and theme updates, indexing content for search, or cleaning up temporary files.

### What is the relationship between the site's cron tasks and Unix cron?

Linux/Unix-based operating systems have a cron scheduler that can be used to run periodic tasks. You can use the server's cron scheduler to schedule runs of the site's cron tasks. Alternatively, you can use the core Automated Cron module to run tasks. You can check the site's cron tasks' status in the status report.

### Related topics

- [#### 13.2, "Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks"](#)
- [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

### Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Setting up cron"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Dave Hansen-Lange](#) at [Advomatic](#), and [Boris Doesborg](#).

## 13.2. Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks

### Goal

Check whether cron maintenance tasks are run regularly, and if not, either install the core Automated Cron module or run cron maintenance tasks from outside the website.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

### Steps

1. Review the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)) to see when cron maintenance tasks were last run.

If you installed the website using the core Standard installation profile (or similar), then cron maintenance tasks might already be running via the core Automated Cron module. By default, these tasks are run about every three hours.

2. Choose whether to run cron maintenance tasks using the core Automated Cron module, or by other means. The core Automated Cron module might not be suitable for some websites because:
  - Each time someone accesses a page on the site, the module checks how long it has been since cron maintenance tasks have last run, and then runs them if necessary. If no one visits the website for a long time, cron maintenance tasks will not be run.
  - Cron maintenance tasks are run after the page has been generated. This means there is less time for the tasks to be run before various server timeouts are reached (for example, PHP execution timeout). If this happens, the logs (see [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#)) will show error messages that cron is unable to complete.
  - There is a small *scalability* cost associated with the core Automated Cron module. This is because one of the web server's processes is occupied (and can't serve other web pages) until the cron maintenance tasks are complete.
3. If you want to use the core Automated Cron module, first make sure it is installed (it is installed with the core Standard install profile; see [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) if it is not installed).

Next, configure the module to control how frequently cron maintenance tasks are run. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Cron (admin/*

*config/system/cron).* Choose the desired interval in the *Cron settings* section, and click *Save configuration*.

4. If you want to run cron maintenance tasks from outside the website, uninstall the core Automated Cron module (see [#### 4.4, "Uninstalling Unused Modules"](#)). Next, find the cron URL. This URL is shown in the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)), and in the *Cron* administration page (see previous step). The URL looks like this: *http://www.example.com/cron/0MgWtfB33FYbbQ5UAC3L0LL3RCOPT3RNUBZILLA0Nf1Re*

Whenever this URL is visited, cron maintenance tasks will run. Set up one of the following schedulers to access this URL regularly:

- [The Cron daemon](#) (Linux, OS X, Solaris, BSD)
- [Scheduled Tasks](#) (Windows)
- A cron SASS provider (software as a service)
- A cron manager provided by your web hosting provider (see the documentation provided by your provider)

## Related concepts

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drush page "Running Drupal cron tasks from Drush"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Setting up cron"](#)

### Attributions

Written and edited by [Dave Hansen-Lange](#) at [Advomatic](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 13.3. Concept: Security and Regular Updates

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### ##### ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: ##########"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #######"](#)
- [#### 1.6, "#####: ##### ## #####"](#)

### What are security updates?

Any software occasionally has bugs, and sometimes these bugs have security implications. When security bugs are fixed in the core software, modules, or themes that your site uses, they are released in a *security update*. You will need to apply security updates in order to keep your site secure. See [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#) to learn how to be notified of security updates by email, and [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), and [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#) to learn how to make updates.

### What is the security team?

The Drupal open-source project has a team of volunteers who track security-related bugs and release security updates. They also help other developers fix bugs, and maintain information for users on how to keep their websites secure. You can learn more about the security team and their practices and processes at the [Drupal.org Security Team](#) page.

## How are security bugs reported?

It is important that security problems be kept confidential until they are fixed, so that sites are less likely to be compromised before they can be secured. If you find a potential security problem in any of the software you downloaded from the [Drupal.org](#) website, follow the procedures on the [Drupal.org Security Team](#) page to report it.

## What are regular (non-security) updates?

The core software, modules, and themes also periodically have regular updates to add new features and fix bugs. These updates are less critical than security updates. As a general best practice, updates should be applied as long as they do not cause problems with your site. Testing on a development copy of your site is always a good idea before applying updates on a live site. This is because some updates may include changes that are not compatible with the modules or themes on your site, or that will break a particular functionality on your site.

## Related topics

- [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)

## Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Securing your site"](#)
- ["Security advisories" on Drupal.org](#)
- [Drupal.org Security team](#)

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 13.4. Keeping Track of Updates

### Goal

Keep your site safe and up-to-date by keeping up with the latest security updates.

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

### Steps

There are a few different ways to receive notifications of security releases:

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Settings*. Enter the email addresses to be notified when updates are available. You can also specify whether you want daily or weekly updates. Click *Save configuration*.
- Subscribe to the security announcements email list. To subscribe, log in to *Drupal.org*, go to your user profile page and subscribe to the security newsletter on the *Edit > My newsletters* tab.
- Follow @drupalsecurity on Twitter.
- Subscribe to RSS feeds for [core security updates](#), [contributed project updates](#) and [public service announcements](#).

### Related concepts

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

### Additional resources

- ["Security advisories" on Drupal.org](#)
- [Drupal.org Security Team](#)

- [@drupalsecurity on Twitter](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Sarah German](#) at [Advomatic](#).

## 13.5. Updating the Core Software

### Goal

Update the core software, either through the administrative interface or by using Drush.

### Site prerequisites

- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#) [#####".](#)
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).

### Steps

1. Make a complete backup of your site. Refer to [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
2. Open *settings.php* (*/sites/default/settings.php*) in any plain text editor. Find the line with the `$settings[ update_free_access ]` variable. By default, it is set to "FALSE" due to security reasons. Change the setting to "TRUE":  
`$settings['update_free_access'] = TRUE;`
3. Disable any caching technique (memcache, varnish, and so on) your application might be using.
4. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
5. If you are using Composer to manage dependencies, or using Git, skip the next six steps, and instead see [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#) for instructions on downloading updated files. Continue with the *update.php* step.

6. Download the tar.gz or zip file archive for the latest version of Drupal 8.x core from [Drupal.org Drupal Core Downloads](https://www.drupal.org/project/drupal). See [#### 3.3, ##### ##### ##### ####](#) for more details on how to find the latest version.

7. Upload the archive file to your web hosting server.
8. Extract the archive file to a temporary directory on your server (should be outside the directory where the site is hosted). Your hosting control panel's file manager should provide a way to extract the files. Or, if you have terminal access to your hosting server (running Linux), you can use a command like:

```
tar -xzf drupal-8.3.2.tar.gz
```

9. You can also use Drush to download the archive and extract it in one step, by navigating to the temporary directory on the server and entering this command:

```
drush dl drupal
```

10. In your site hosting directory, delete the *core* and *vendor* directories, and all files that are not in a subdirectory, including *.htaccess*, *composer.json*, and *autoload.php*. Don't delete custom and customized files because you may end up losing the custom functionality stored in them.

11. Copy the *core* and *vendor* directories and the non-custom/non-customized files that you deleted in the preceding step from the temporary directory to your site directory.

12. Run the *update.php* script using either of the following:

- Visit <http://www.example.com/update.php> in your browser (where *www.example.com* is your site's URL). Click *Continue* in the first screen to run the updates and successfully complete the script.

- Run the following Drush command: `drush updb`

13. If you get any error or warning, re-run the *update.php* script again till all the updates have been completed successfully.

14. Open *settings.php* (*/sites/default/settings.php*) in a text editor. Find the line with the

```
$settings[ update_free_access ] = FALSE;
```

15. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.

16. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
17. Clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).
18. Re-enable any caching technique you disabled at Step 3.
19. You should have the updated version running. You can verify the current version of your software by checking the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)).

## Expand your understanding

- [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### #### # #####"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#)

## Related concepts

[#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

## Additional resources

- ["Drupal Core Downloads" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Registry Rebuild" page on Drupal.org](#)
- The file /core/UPDATE.txt within your installation.

## Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), [Boris Doesborgh](#), and [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

## 13.6. Updating a Module

### Goal

Update a contributed module and run the *Database updates* script.

## Prerequisite knowledge

- #### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"
- #### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"

## Site prerequisites

- A contributed module has been installed and there is an update available for it. See #### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org" and #### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates".
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See #### 11.8, "Making a Development Site".
- You have created a full-site backup. See #### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups".
- If you want to use the user interface, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See #### 4.3, "Installing a Module" for instructions on installing core modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See #### 3.2, "#####: #####".

## Steps

Before you start, check for module-specific update instructions. This is typically necessary while updating modules that involve the usage of third-party libraries. Read and understand all module-specific requirements before proceeding with the updates. To find instructions, check the module's project page *Read Documentation* link.

To view further instructions, download the tar.gz or .zip file from the project page to your local computer. Unzip the file and look for *README.txt*, *INSTALL.txt*, and *UPGRADE.txt* that come with the module's installation file. Also, review the release notes on the project page by clicking the version number you're downloading.

### Downloads

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.19	<a href="#">tar.gz (17.07 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (27.02 KB)</a>	2017-Apr-06
<b>Development releases</b>		
8.x-1.x-dev	<a href="#">tar.gz (19.49 KB)</a>   <a href="#">zip (29.81 KB)</a>	2017-Jun-11
<a href="#">View all releases</a>		

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to update a contributed module. If you are updating a custom module rather than a contributed module, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to obtain the new module files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#). You can then continue here with step 6 in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Update* (`admin/reports/updates/update`).
3. Find and check the module in the list. Click *Download these updates* for the module.

The screenshot shows the 'Update' page with the title 'Update ☆'. There are three tabs: 'List' (selected), 'Update', and 'Settings'. The breadcrumb navigation shows: Home > Administration > Reports > Available updates. It indicates 'Last checked: 4 minutes 5 seconds ago' and provides a link to 'Check manually'. A table lists the available update for the 'Admin Toolbar' module, showing the current installed version (8.x-1.15) and the recommended version (8.x-1.16). A link to 'Release notes' is provided for the recommended version. A large button labeled 'Download these updates' is visible. Below this, a section titled 'Manual updates required' states that 'Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.' Another table lists the update for 'Drupal core', showing the current installed version (8.2.0-dev) and the recommended version (8.1.8). A link to 'Release notes' is provided for the recommended version.

<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin Toolbar	8.x-1.15	8.x-1.16 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> )

Manual updates required		
Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.		
NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
Drupal core	8.2.0-dev	8.1.8 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> )

4. Click *Continue*.

5. Click *Run database updates*. If you obtained the new module files manually, start with this step, and reach the database updates page by typing the URL `example.com/update.php` in your browser.
6. Click *Continue* and apply all updates. The database update scripts will be executed.
7. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.
8. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
9. Clear the cache (refer to [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)).

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the module you wish to update. It is the last segment of the module's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is `https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar`, the project name is "admin\_toolbar".
2. Run the following Drush command, giving the project name (for example, `admin_toolbar`) as a parameter (if you have more than one module to update, add the additional module project names to the end of the command, separated by spaces):  
`drush up admin_toolbar`
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- Review the site log (refer to [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#)) once the updates are complete to check for errors.
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

## Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Updating modules"](#)

### Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborgh](#), and [Sarah German](#) at [Advomatic](#), from ["Updating modules"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

## 13.7. Updating a Theme

### Goal

Update a contributed theme on your site and run the *Database Updates* script.

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

### Site prerequisites

- A contributed theme has been installed and there is an update available for it. See [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#) and [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- You have created a full site backup. See [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
- If you want to use the user interface, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

### Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to update a contributed theme. If you are updating a custom theme rather than a contributed theme, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to obtain the new theme files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#), and then continue with step 6 in the instructions for administrative interface below.

## Using the administrative interface

1. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Update* ([admin/reports/updates/update](#)).
3. Find and check the theme in the list. Click *Download these updates* for the theme.

The screenshot shows the 'Update' page with the title 'Update ★'. Below it are three tabs: 'List', 'Update', and 'Settings'. The 'List' tab is selected. The page displays the following information:

- Last checked:** 1 minute 1 second ago ([Check manually](#))
- Available updates:**

<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
<input type="checkbox"/>	MAYO (Theme)	8.x-1.2	8.x-1.3 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> )
- Manual updates required:**

NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
Drupal core	8.2.0-dev	8.1.8 ( <a href="#">Release notes</a> )

4. Click *Continue*.
5. Click *Run database updates*. If you obtained the new theme files manually, start with this step, and reach the database updates page by typing the URL `example.com/update.php` in your browser.
6. Click *Continue* to run the updates. The database update scripts will be executed.
7. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.
8. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).

9. Clear the Drupal cache (refer to [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)).

## Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the theme you wish to update, which is the last segment of the theme's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>, the project name is "mayo".
2. Run the following Drush command, giving the project name (for example, `mayo`) as a parameter:  
`drush up mayo`
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## Expand your understanding

- Review the site log, see [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#), once the updates are complete to check for errors.
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

---

# رخ آن خس. 14. لصف

## 14.1. Connecting with the Community

### Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.6, #####: ##### #####](#)

### How can you connect with the community?

The Drupal project has a world-wide community of developers and users. One of the best ways to improve your knowledge of the platform is to connect with others that are using it, and get involved in the open-source community. There are many ways that you can get started:

#### Attend an event

There are both regional and international Drupal events held around the world. See the ["DrupalCon" page on Drupal.org](#) to find international events, and the ["Event Calendar" on groups.drupal.org](#) or [drupalical.com](#) to find regional events.

#### Join a local group

There are Drupal user groups all around the world. Many of them have regular meetings, which you can attend to learn more about Drupal and connect to other Drupal users. Find local user groups on [groups.drupal.org](#).

#### Participate in a topical or language group

There are also interest groups for a wide range of topics, which have on-line discussion forums. Find topical groups on [groups.drupal.org](#). Many languages have their own websites too; you can find them on the ["Language-specific communities" page on Drupal.org](#).

#### Chat online

The Drupal project uses IRC for on-line chatting. There are regional, topical, and general-purpose chat groups available. Find out more on the ["IRC" page on Drupal.org](#).

#### Report a problem

See below.

#### Contribute

You can contribute your time and expertise to the community in many ways, such as:

- Developing modules or themes. See the "["Contribute to Development" page on Drupal.org](#)", or improving them (using the issue queues for existing projects).
- Translating the user interface. See [localize.drupal.org](#).
- Writing documentation. See "["Contribute to Documentation" on Drupal.org](#)".
- Answer Support questions. See [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#).

## How can you report a problem or suggest a feature?

Each project within the community (such as the Drupal Core project for the base software, and projects for each contributed theme and module) uses *issues* to keep track of software bugs and plans for new features. You can participate by creating a bug report when you find a problem, creating a feature request, or commenting on existing issues. Search before creating an issue, to make sure that the problem or feature has not already been reported or requested. See the [Drupal.org page "Use the issue queue"](#) and the [Drupal.org page "Reporting a problem"](#) for more information.

If you find a problem that you believe is related to security, such as a cross-site scripting vulnerability, do not report it in the standard issue queue. Instead, report it to the security team. See the [Drupal.org page "How to report a security issue"](#) for details.

## Related topics

[#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

## Additional resources

- ["Code of Conduct" on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Event Calendar" on groups.drupal.org or drupical.com](#)
- ["Where is the Drupal Community?" page on Drupal.org](#)
- [groups.drupal.org](#)
- ["IRC" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Ways to get involved" page on Drupal.org](#)

- [Drupal.org page "Why get involved?"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Contributor tasks"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Use the issue queue"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Reporting a problem"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "How to report a security issue"](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#).

## 14.2. Getting Support

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

### Where can you find support?

The Drupal project is open-source, so if you have questions about or problems with the software, your options for finding answers and fixes are somewhat different from what they would be for commercial software.

There are several options for free support provided by community volunteers. First, some IRC channels, local groups, and language communities encourage support questions, through on-line chat, in-person meetings, or websites (find out more about these on [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)).

Second, some (but not all) contributed module, distribution, and theme projects encourage you to post support requests in issues. Generally, projects that have a very large number of users do not allow support requests in their issues (Drupal Core is in that category), while projects with a smaller number of users welcome the occasional support question. Be respectful of developer time and read the documentation for the project before posting a question in an issue. On the other hand, all projects encourage you to use issues to report problems and bugs; see [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) to learn more about that.

In addition to those resources, the following sites provide free forums where volunteers answer support questions about Drupal:

- The [Drupal.org Forums](#)
- ["Drupal Answers" on StackExchange](#)

If you prefer to pay for support (presumably in exchange for more extensive service or better availability), you can find service providers in the ["Drupal Marketplace" on Drupal.org](#).

## Related topics

- [#### 14.3, "Learning More"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

## Additional resources

- ["Support" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Drupal Marketplace" on Drupal.org](#)
- The [Drupal.org Forums](#)
- ["Drupal Answers" on StackExchange](#)

## Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

## 14.3. Learning More

### Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

### Where can you go to learn more?

The following resources should prove useful to you, as you continue to advance your skills:

### [\*"Drupal Community Documentation" section on Drupal.org\*](#)

Wiki-like documentation contributed by the Drupal community, ranging from basic to advanced, about all aspects of Drupal (site building and administration, theming, development, and contributed modules).

### [\*api.drupal.org\*](#)

Reference documentation for programmers about the Drupal API.

### [\*"Drupal Planet" page on Drupal.org\*](#)

An aggregation of blog posts about Drupal from around the web, posted by blogging members of the Drupal community who have applied for inclusion. Topics range from programming to site building to Drupal news.

Groups, events, and meetups

See [\*#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"\*](#) for more about topical, regional, and language groups, as well as local, regional, and international events.

### [\*"Training Marketplace" page on Drupal.org\*](#)

The Marketplace lists paid training providers. For free training, check whether events include training sessions; there are also free or very low-cost training events listed on the [\*"Global Training Days" page on Drupal.org\*](#).

Support sites

See [\*#### 14.2, "Getting Support"\*](#) to locate support forums; searching them can be useful for learning about specific topics.

## **Attributions**

Written by [\*Jennifer Hodgdon\*](#), and [\*Joe Shindelar\*](#) at [\*Drupalize.Me\*](#).

---

# ن اگڙاو

## Ajax

A web technology used to exchange data with a server to dynamically update parts of a web page (for example, forms) without needing entire page reloads.

## Alias

A user-friendly name to replace the internal *path* that the system assigns to a URL on the site. For example, you might assign an alias of */about* to the About page on your site, to replace the internal path */node/5*. This would give the page a URL of *http://example.com/about* instead of *http://example.com/node/5*. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more information.

## Anonymous

A person ([user](#)) interacting with the site who is not logged in. See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

## Block

A chunk of [content](#) (text, images, links, etc.) that can be displayed on a page of a site. Blocks are displayed in [regions](#). See [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#) for more information.

## Breakpoint

Breakpoints are used to separate the height or width of browser screens, printers, and other media output types into steps. A [responsive](#) site adjusts its presentation at these breakpoints. See [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#) for more information.

## Bundle

Synonym for [Entity subtype](#).

## Cache

The site's internal cache stores the output of time-consuming calculations, such as computing output for an HTML page request, and then retrieves them instead of recalculating the next time they are needed. External caching systems can also be used on the web server to speed up a site's response. See [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#) for more information on the internal cache.

## CMS

Acronym for [Content Management System](#).

## Configuration

Information about your site that is not [content](#), and is meant to be more permanent than [state](#) information, such as the name of your site, the [content types](#) and [views](#) you have defined, etc. See [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#) for more information.

## Content

Information meant to be displayed on your site, such as text, images, downloads, etc. See also [Configuration](#) and [State](#). See [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#) for more information.

## Content item

An item of [content](#) that is typically meant to be displayed as the main content of a page on your site. This is an [entity type](#). See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Content Management System (CMS)

A collection of tools designed to allow the creation, modification, organization, search, retrieval and removal of information on a website. See [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### ## ##### ## #####"](#) for more information.

## Content type

An [entity subtype](#) for the [content item entity type](#). Each content type is used for some particular purpose on the site, and each has its own fields. For example, a site for a farmers market might have a content type for simple pages, and another for a vendor listing page. See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Contextual link

A link to an administrative page for editing or configuring a feature of the site, shown in the context where that feature is displayed. Example: a link to configure a [menu](#) that is shown when you hover your mouse over the menu. See [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for more information.

## Contributed

[Modules](#), [themes](#), and [distributions](#) that are not part of the [Drupal core](#) download, and that can be downloaded separately from the [Drupal.org](#) website.

## Cron

On some operating systems, *cron* is a command scheduler application that executes commands or scripts periodically. Your site defines periodic tasks, also known as cron tasks, that need to be triggered either by an operating system cron scheduler, or internally. See [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#) for more information.

## Distribution

A single download that provides a shortcut for setting up a specific type of site, such as a website for a club or for e-commerce. A distribution contains [Drupal core](#), along with [contributed modules](#) and/or [themes](#); many distributions also pre-configure the site or even create sample content upon installation. See [#### 1.4, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

## Drupal core

The files, themes, profiles, and modules included with the standard project software download. See [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### # # ##### # # ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Entity

An item of either [content](#) or [configuration](#) data, although in common usage, the term often refers to content entities. Examples include [content items](#), custom [blocks](#), [taxonomy terms](#), and definitions of [content types](#); the first three are content entities, and the last is a configuration entity. See also [Entity type](#), [Entity subtype](#), and [Field](#). See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Entity subtype

Within a [content entity type](#), a grouping of entities that share the same [fields](#). For example, within the [content item](#) entity type, a farmers market site might have subtypes (known as [content types](#)) for static pages and vendor pages, each with its own group of fields. You may also see the term *bundle* used (especially in programmer documentation) as a synonym of entity subtype. See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

### Entity type

The overall type of an [entity](#); in common usage, it is only applied to a [content](#) entity.

Examples include [content types](#), [taxonomy terms](#), and custom [blocks](#). See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

### Field

Data of a certain type that is attached to a [content entity](#). For instance, on a farmers market site's vendor content type, you might have fields for an image, the vendor description, and a [taxonomy term](#). See [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

### Field bundle

Synonym for [Entity subtype](#).

### Field formatter

[Configuration](#) that defines how the data in a [field](#) is displayed. For example, a text field could be displayed with a prefix and/or suffix, and it could have its HTML tags stripped out or limited. See also [View mode](#) and [Field widget](#). See [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) for more information.

### Field widget

[Configuration](#) that defines how someone can enter or edit data for a [field](#) on a data entry form. For example, a text field could use a single-line or multi-line entry box, and there could be a setting for the size of the box. See also [Field formatter](#). See [#### 6.8, "Concept: Forms and Widgets"](#) for more information.

### Formatter

See [Field formatter](#).

### FOSS

Acronym for *Free and Open Source Software*, meaning software that is developed by a community of people and released under a non-commercial license. See also [GPL](#). See [#### 1.6, "#####: ##### # #####"](#) for more information.

## GPL

Acronym for the *GNU General Public License*, a non-commercial software license. All software downloaded from the [Drupal.org](#) website is licensed under the "["GNU General Public License, version 2"](#)". See also [FOSS](#). See [#### 1.7, "#####: ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Image style

A set of processing steps that transform a base image into a new image; typical processing includes scaling and cropping. See [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#) for more information.

## LAMP

Acronym for *Linux, Apache, MySQL, and PHP*: the software on the web server that the scripts commonly run on (although it can use other operating systems, web servers, and databases). See [#### 3.1, "#####: ##### ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Log

A list of recorded events on the site, such as usage data, performance data, errors, warnings, and operational information. See [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#) for more information.

## Menu

A set of links used for navigation on a site, which may be arranged in a hierarchy. See [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#) for more information.

## Module

Software (usually PHP, JavaScript, and/or CSS) that extends site features and adds functionality. The Drupal project distinguishes between [core](#) and [contributed](#) modules.

See [#### 1.2, "#####: ##### #####"](#) for more information.

## Path

The unique, last part of the internal URL that the system assigns to a page on the site, which can be a visitor-facing page or an administrative page. For example, the internal URL for the About page on your site might be *http://example.com/node/5*, and in this case, the path is *node/5*. See also [Alias](#). See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more information.

## Permission

The ability to perform some action on the site, such as editing a particular type of [content](#), or viewing user profiles. See also [Role](#). See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

## Reference field

A [field](#) that represents a relationship between an [entity](#) and one or more other entities, which may be the same [entity type](#) or a different type. For example, on a farmers market site, a recipe content item might have a reference field to the vendor (also a content item) that posted the recipe. [Taxonomy term](#) fields are also reference fields. See [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#) for more information.

## Region

A defined area of a page where [content](#) can be placed, such as the header, footer, main content area, left sidebar, etc. Regions are defined by [themes](#), and the content displayed in each region is contained in [blocks](#). See [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### # # # #####"](#) for more information.

## Responsive

A site or [theme](#) is said to be responsive if it adjusts its presentation in response to the size of the browser screen, printer, or other media output type. See also [Breakpoint](#). See [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#) for more information.

## Revision

A record of the past or present state of a [content entity](#), as it is edited over time. See [#### 2.6, "#####: ##### # ##### # #####"](#) for more information.

## Role

A named set of [permissions](#) that can be applied to a [user account](#). See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

## Security update

An [update](#) that fixes a security-related bug, such as a hacking vulnerability. See [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#) for more information.

## State

Information of a temporary nature about the current state of your site, such as the time when [cron](#) was last run, etc. See also [Content](#) and [Configuration](#). See [#### 1.5, "####: ###### ####"](#) for more information.

## Taxonomy

The process of classifying [content](#). See [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

## Taxonomy term

A term used to classify [content](#), such as a tag or a category. See also [Vocabulary](#). See [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

## Text format

[Configuration](#) that defines the processing that happens to user-entered text before it is shown in the browser. This might include stripping or limiting HTML tags, or turning URLs into links. See [#### 6.15, "Concept: Text Formats and Editors"](#) for more information.

## Theme

Software and asset files (images, CSS, PHP code, and/or templates) that determine the style and layout of the site. The Drupal project distinguishes between [core](#) and [contributed](#) themes. See [#### 1.3, "####: #####"](#) for more information.

## UI

Acronym for [User Interface](#).

## Update

A newer version of your site's software, either [Drupal core](#) or a [module](#) or [theme](#). See also [Security update](#). See [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#) for more information.

## User

A person interacting with the site, either logged-in or [anonymous](#). See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

## User interface

The text, styles, and images that are visible on a site, separated logically into the user interface for site visitors and the administrative user interface.

### User one (User 1)

The initial [user](#) account that is created when you install the site (whose ID number is 1).

It automatically has all [permissions](#), even if it is not assigned an administrative [role](#). See [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#) for more information.

### View

A formatted listing of data; typically, the data comes from [content entities](#). For example, on a farmers market site, you might create a [content item](#) for each vendor. You could then make view that generates a listing page that shows a thumbnail image and short description of each vendor, linking to the full-page content item. Using the same data, you could also make a view that generates a new vendors block, which would show information from the most recently added vendors. See [#### 2.4, "#####: #####"](#) [#####"](#) for more information.

### View mode

A set of [field formatter configuration](#) for all of the [fields](#) of a [content entity](#), some of which may be hidden. Each [entity subtype](#) can have one or more view modes defined; for example, [content types](#) typically have *Full* and *Teaser* view modes, where the *Teaser* view mode displays fewer or trimmed-down fields. See [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) for more information.

### Vocabulary

A group of [taxonomy terms](#) to choose from when classifying [content](#) in a particular way, such as the list of all of the vendor categories on a farmers market site. Technically, vocabularies are the [entity subtype](#) for the taxonomy term [entity type](#). See [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

### Widget

See [Field widget](#).

### Wizard

A web form that allows you to fill in a few values, and creates something with sensible defaults based on the values you chose. For example, there are wizards for creating [views](#) of different types. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) for more information.

## WYSIWYG

Acronym for *What You See is What You Get*, meaning a method for editing [content](#) where what you see on the editing screen closely resembles the final product. See [#### 6.16, "Configuring Text Formats and Editors"](#) for more information.

# ھی امن

## A

Account setting 44  
    configuring,  
Admin Toolbar module 169  
    downloading 169  
    installing,  
Administration 35  
    overview,  
Administrative interface 209  
    using to update the core software,  
Administrative menu 35, 61  
    overview,  
Administrative user account 109  
    overview,  
Ajax 223  
    definition,  
Alias 223  
    definition, 52  
    overview,  
Anonymous 223  
    definition,  
Anonymous user 109  
    overview,  
Apache web server 22  
    version requirements,  
Appearance menu entry 35  
    administrative menu, 242  
Attributions for this document, 242  
Authenticated user 109  
    overview,  
Author 122  
    assigning,  
Automated Cron module 204  
    configuring 203  
    overview,

## B

Backup 198  
    overview,  
Bartik theme 47  
    configuring 47  
    regions in,  
Basic page 53  
    creating,  
Block

125  
    creating, 143  
    creating from a view, 223  
    definition, 14  
    entity type, 125  
    overview, 128  
    placing in a region, 128  
Breadcrumb region  
    overview,  
Breakpoint 223  
    definition, 105  
    overview,  
Bug 206, 218  
    reporting,  
Bundle 223  
    definition,  
  
**C**  
Cache 196  
    clearing, 223  
    definition, 195  
    overview, 196  
    rebuilding, 218, 220  
Chatting online,  
CKEditor module 107  
    configuring,  
CKEditor text editor 107  
    default assignment to text format,  
CMS (Content Management System) 223  
    definition, 1  
    overview,  
Coder tool 23  
    overview,  
Color scheme 47  
    configuring,  
Comment entity type 14  
    overview,  
Comment module 14  
    entity type,  
Community 218  
    connecting with,  
Composer tool 23  
    overview,  
    using to download modules, 186  
    using to download the core software, 186  
    using to download themes,  
Composite page 16  
    creating with modular content,  
Configuration 6  
    as a type of data,

- copying, 189
- definition, 189
- deploying,
- synchronizing between development and live site, 192
- translating,
- Configuration Manager module
  - using to synchronize the configuration between a development and live site, 192
- Configuration menu entry 35
  - administrative menu,
- Configuration Translation module 150
  - installing, 149
  - overview,
- Configuring
  - content translation, 152
  - home page, 39
  - site, 38
  - text format, 107
- Contact form entity type 14
  - overview,
- Contact module 14
  - entity type,
- Content
  - adding to menu while editing, 62
  - as a type of data, 122
  - assigning author, 198
  - backing up, 224
  - definition, 97
  - displaying, 53, 57
  - editing, 14
  - editing entry form, 92
  - entity type, 35
  - finding, 16
  - modular, 149, 155
  - translating, 152
  - translation,
- Content attributions for this document, 242
- Content display 97
  - changing, 97
  - managing,
- Content editing form 91
  - overview,
- Content entity type 14
  - overview,
- Content item 33
  - creating, 224
  - definition,
- Content list view
- creating, 134
- Content Management System (CMS) 223, 224
  - definition, 1
  - overview,
- Content menu entry 35
  - administrative menu,
- Content reference field 88
  - adding, 80
  - overview,
- Content region 97
  - overview,
- Content structure 77
  - planning,
- Content Translation module 150
  - installing, 149
  - overview,
- Content type 88
  - adding, 75
  - adding field to, 224
  - definition, 73
  - deleting,
- Contextual filters part of view 132
  - overview,
- Contextual link 224
  - definition, 35
  - overview,
- Contributed 224
  - definition,
- Contributed module 224
  - definition, 169, 179, 186
  - downloading, 161
  - evaluating, 161
  - finding, 169
  - installing, 3
  - overview, 211
  - updating,
- Contributed theme 224
  - definition, 175, 179, 186
  - downloading, 175
  - enabling, 172
  - evaluating, 192
  - finding, 175
  - installing, 215
  - updating,
- Contributing to the project, 218
- Copyright for this document, 242
- Core module 3
  - overview,
- Core software

- installation requirements, 22  
 installing, 209  
 updating,  
**Core theme** 4  
 overview,  
**Country setting** 38  
 configuring,  
**Cron command scheduler** 224  
 definition,  
**Cron task** 204  
 configuring, 224  
 definition, 203  
 overview,  
**Cross-site scripting (XSS)** 106  
 preventing,  
**Custom block** 125  
 creating, 14  
 entity type,  
**Custom block module** 14  
 entity type,  
**Custom menu** 61  
 overview,  
**Custom theme** 175  
 enabling, 175  
 installing, 4  
 overview,
- D**
- Data type** 6  
 configuration, 6  
 content, 6  
 overview, 6  
 session, 6  
 state,
- Database** 198  
 backing up,  
 configuring during the installation process, 22  
 installation requirements, 22
- Deployment workflow** 182  
 overview,
- Devel tool** 23  
 overview,
- Development site** 183  
 making, 182  
 overview, 192  
 synchronizing with live site,
- Disk space** 22  
 installation requirements,
- Display part of view** 32  
 overview,
- Distribution** 225  
 definition, 6  
 full-featured, 6  
 overview, 6  
 quick-start,
- Documentation** 221  
 about Drupal, 221  
 about the Drupal API, 221  
 available on drupal.org, 221  
 contributed by the Drupal Community, 221  
 Drupal Planet blog posts, 221  
 for programmers,
- Downloading** 25, 186  
 core software, 186  
 module, 175, 186  
 module or theme files manually, 179  
 theme,
- Drupal Association**  
 overview,
- Drupal Console** tool 23  
 overview,
- Drupal content management system**  
 overview, 1  
 server requirements, 1
- Drupal core** 225  
 definition, 28  
 installing, 1  
 overview, 25  
 preparing install,
- Drupal licensing**  
 overview,
- Drupal project** 218  
 connecting with,  
 overview,
- Drupal training** 221  
 resources for,
- Drupal user group** 19  
 finding,
- Drupal.org website**  
 downloading and installing module from, 189  
 downloading and installing theme from, 175  
 downloading modules and themes from, 181  
 finding and evaluating modules on, 172  
 finding and evaluating themes on,
- Drush tool**

- 
- 23**  
 overview, 169  
 using to download and install module, 175  
 using to download and install theme, 25  
 using to install the core software, 41  
 using to uninstall module, 211  
 using to update module, 209  
 using to update the core software, 215  
 using to update theme, 215  
**Dynamic Page Cache module**  
 overview, 195
- E**  
**Editing content**, 55, 57  
**Editor** 107  
 configuring, 107  
**Editor module** 107  
 configuring, 107  
**Editorial Workflow** 20  
 overview, 20  
**Effect** 100, 101  
 image, 100  
**Email address** 38  
 configuring, 38  
**Enabling** 169  
 module, 175  
 theme, 175  
**Entity** 225  
 definition, 14  
 overview, 225  
**Entity reference field** 88  
 adding, 88  
**Entity subtype** 225  
 definition, 14  
 overview, 225  
**Entity type** 225  
 definition, 14  
 overview, 225  
**Entity view mode** 96  
 overview, 96  
**Error** 200  
 log report, 200  
**Error page** 38  
 configuring, 38  
**Event** 218  
 Drupal, 218  
**Extend menu entry** 35  
 administrative menu, 35
- F**  
**Farmers market**  
 usage scenario for this document, 100  
**Feature** 189  
 copying, 189  
 deploying, 189  
**Featured regions**  
 overview, 189  
**Field** 75  
 adding to content type, 80  
 content reference, 226  
 definition, 80  
 for adding references, 14, 91  
 overview, 80  
 reference, 80  
 taxonomy term reference, 80  
 user reference, 80  
**Field bundle** 226  
 definition, 226  
**Field formatter** 226  
 definition, 96  
 overview, 226  
**Field module** 3  
 overview, 3  
**Field UI module** 3  
 overview, 3  
**Field widget** 226  
 definition, 226  
**Fields part of view** 132  
 overview, 132  
**File** 198  
 backing up, 198  
**File module** 14  
 entity type, 14  
**Filter criteria part of view** 132  
 overview, 132  
**Filter module** 107  
 configuring, 107  
**First day of week** 38  
 configuring, 38  
**Footer menu** 61  
 overview, 61  
**Footer regions** 17  
 overview, 17  
**Form** 91  
 overview, 91  
**Form entity type** 14  
 overview, 14

Format part of view 132  
 overview,  
 Formatter 226  
 definition, 96  
 overview,  
 Forum 220  
 user support,  
 FOSS (Free and Open Source Software) 220  
 definition, 7  
 overview,  
 Free and Open Source Software (FOSS) 220  
 definition, 7  
 overview,  
 Front page 38, 59  
 configuring, 59  
 Full editor,  
 Full-featured distribution 6  
 overview,  
 Functionality 169  
 extending,

## G

Git tool 23  
 overview, 23  
 Glossary,  
 GNU General Public License 226  
 definition, 9  
 overview,  
 GPL (General Public License or GNU General Public License) 226  
 definition, 9  
 overview,  
 Group 218  
 finding,  
 Guiding scenario for this document (farmers market),

## H

Header region  
 overview,  
 Help menu entry 35  
 administrative menu,  
 Help region 11  
 overview,  
 Hiawatha web server 22  
 version requirements,  
 Highlighted region  
 overview,  
 Home page

configuring, 59  
 creating,  
 HTML5 picture tag 105  
 and responsive images, 105

## I

Image 101  
 resizing,  
 Image effect 100  
 overview,  
 Image field 75  
 adding,  
 Image module 134  
 creating a view,  
 Image style 101  
 creating, 227  
 definition, 100  
 overview, 105  
 responsive, 57  
 In-place editor, 28  
 Installation process 28  
 Installation profile,  
 Installation requirements 22  
 database, 22  
 disk space 22  
 overview,  
 PHP programming language, 22  
 web server,  
 Installer tool 28  
 running,  
 Installing 22, 25  
 core software, 182  
 development site, 182  
 module, 182  
 staging site, 182  
 theme, 175  
 Interest group 218  
 finding,  
 Interface Translation module 150  
 installing, 149  
 overview,  
 Internal Page Cache module 195  
 overview,  
 Internet Relay Chat (IRC) 218, 220  
 using to chat online,  
 IRC (Internet Relay Chat) 218, 220  
 using to chat online,

- L**
- Label 157
    - translating,
  - LAMP (Linux Apache MySQL PHP) 227
    - definition,
  - Language 150
    - adding,
  - Language module 150
    - installing, 149
    - overview,
  - Layout 12
    - planning,
  - Learning resource 221
    - link to,
  - Legal 9
    - overview,
  - Licensing 9
    - overview,
  - Linux Apache MySQL PHP (LAMP) 227
    - definition,
  - Listing content 134
    - using Views module to,
  - Live site 192
    - synchronizing with development site,
  - Locale setting 38
    - configuring,
  - Log 227
    - definition, 200
    - overview,
  - Logo image 47
    - configuring,
- M**
- Maintenance mode 166
    - disabling, 166
    - enabling, 166
    - overview,
  - Manage administrative menu 35
    - overview,
  - Manually downloading module or theme files 179
    - overview,
  - Menu 62
    - adding a link to page, 61
    - administrative, 61
    - custom, 227
    - definition, 61
    - footer, 61
    - main,
  - Module 169
    - Admin Toolbar, 107
    - CKEditor, 14
    - Comment, 192
    - Configuration Manager, 149, 150
    - Configuration Translation, 14
    - Contact, 149, 150
    - Content Translation, 3, 169
    - contributed, 3
    - core, 169
    - custom, 14
    - Custom Block 227
      - definition, 169, 179, 186
      - downloading, 195
    - Dynamic Page Cache, 107
    - Editor, 40, 169
    - enabling, 161
    - evaluating, 3
    - Field, 3
    - Field UI, 14
    - File, 107
    - Filter, 161
    - finding, 134
    - Image, 40, 169
    - installing, 149, 150
    - Interface Translation, 195
    - Internal Page Cache, 149, 150
    - Language, 3
    - Menu UI, 3, 14
    - Node, 3
    - overview, 14
    - Taxonomy, 41
    - uninstalling unused, 169, 175
    - Update Manager, 211
      - updating,

User, 3, 14  
 Views, 3  
 Views UI,  
 Multilingual modules 150  
 enabling, 150  
 installing,  
 MySQL database 22  
 version requirements, 22

**N**

Navigation 65  
 changing the order of menu items, 62  
 linking menu to page,  
 Nginx web server 22  
 version requirements, 22  
 Node module 14  
 entity type, 3  
 overview,

**P**

Page 62  
 adding to menu while editing, 16  
 composite, 16  
 Page cache 195  
 overview,  
 Path 227  
 definition, 52  
 overview,  
 People menu entry 35  
 administrative menu,  
 Performance 41  
 improving, 200  
 log report, 201  
 status report,  
 Permission 117  
 changing, 119  
 changing role, 227  
 definition, 117  
 denying, 117  
 granting, 109  
 overview,  
 PHP programming language 22  
 version requirements,  
 PHP version 201  
 status report,  
 Planning 12  
 site layout,  
 PostgreSQL database 22  
 version requirements,

Primary menu region  
 overview,  
 Profile 28  
 installation,  
 Published flag 20  
 overview,

**Q** 57

Quick editor,  
 Quick-start distribution  
 overview,

**R**

Reference field 88  
 adding, 80  
 content, 228  
 definition, 80  
 overview, 80  
 taxonomy term, 80  
 user, 80  
 Region 11  
 breadcrumb, 11  
 content, 228  
 definition, 11  
 featured, 1  
 footer, 11  
 header, 1  
 help, 11  
 highlighted, 11  
 menu, 11  
 overview, 11  
 placing a block in, 128  
 primary menu, 11  
 secondary menu, 11  
 sidebar, 11  
 Regional setting 38  
 configuring,  
 Relationships 32  
 part of view  
 overview,  
 Report 200  
 Recent log messages,  
 Reports menu entry 35  
 administrative menu,  
 Resource 221  
 documentation and training,

Responsive 228

definition,  
 Responsive image style 105  
 overview,

Revision 228  
 definition, 20  
 overview,

Role 112  
 administrator, 112  
 anonymous user, 112  
 authenticated user, 112  
 changing, 117  
 changing permission, 117  
 creating, 228  
 definition, 109  
 overview,

**S**

Scenario for this document (farmers market)  
 overview,

Secondary menu region 11  
 overview,

Security 117  
 assigning permission, 106  
 cross-site scripting, 44  
 managing user accounts, 206  
 overview, 201  
 status report, 106  
 text format, 44  
 user account settings, 1  
 user one account,

Security announcement 208  
 subscribing to by email, 208  
 subscribing to on Twitter,

Security bug 206  
 reporting,

Security team 206  
 overview,

Security update 211, 215  
 applying, 228  
 definition, 208  
 keeping track of,

Server information 201  
 status report,

Session 6  
 as a type of data,

Sidebar regions 1  
 overview,

Site email address 38  
 configuring,

Site information 201  
 status report,

Site layout

planning, 12  
 Site name 38  
 configuring,

Site plan 17  
 content structure,

Site slogan 38  
 configuring,

Site tagline 38  
 configuring,

Slogan 38  
 configuring,

Software dependencies 186  
 managing,

Software version 201  
 status report,

Sort criteria part of view 32  
 overview,

SQLight database 22  
 version requirements,

Staging site 183  
 making, 182  
 overview,

State 6  
 as a type of data, 228  
 definition,

Status report 201  
 overview,

Structure menu entry 35  
 administrative menu,

Style 100, 101  
 image,

Support 220  
 finding,

**T**

Tagline 38  
 configuring,

Taxonomy 83  
 creating, 229  
 definition, 81  
 overview,

Taxonomy module 14  
 entity type,

Taxonomy term 229  
 definition, 14  
 overview,

Taxonomy term reference field 88  
 adding, 80  
 overview,

- Term (taxonomy) 81  
 fixed list, 81  
 free tagging, 81  
 overview, 81
- Term list 83  
 creating, 83  
 Terminology (Glossary), 223
- Text format 107  
 configuring, 229  
 definition, 106  
 overview, 106
- Theme 47  
 configuring, 175  
 contributed, 4  
 core, 4, 175  
 custom, 229  
 definition, 175, 179, 186  
 downloading, 175  
 enabling, 172  
 evaluating, 92  
 finding, 175  
 installing, 4  
 overview, 11  
 regions in, 4  
 third-party, 215  
 updating, 215
- Third-party theme 4  
 overview, 4
- Time zone setting 38  
 configuring, 38
- Tool 23  
 Coder, 23  
 Composer, 23  
 Devel, 23  
 drupalConsole, 23  
 Drush, 23  
 Git, 23
- Toolbar 35  
 overview, 35
- Training 221  
 Global Training Days, 221  
 resource, 221  
 Training Marketplace, 221
- Translating 157  
 configuration, 153  
 content, 157  
 label, 149  
 overview, 149  
 view, 157
- Troubleshooting 200  
 log report, 201  
 status report, 201
- U**
- UI (User Interface) 229  
 definition, 229
- Uniform Resource Locator (URL) 32  
 overview, 32
- Uninstalling 41  
 unused modules, 41
- Unpublished flag 20  
 overview, 20
- Update 229  
 definition, 208  
 keeping track of, 206  
 overview, 201  
 status report, 201
- Update Manager module 208  
 overview, 169  
 using to install module, 175  
 using to install theme, 175
- Update status 201  
 status report, 201
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator) 32  
 overview, 32
- URL alias 52  
 overview, 52
- URL field 75  
 adding, 75
- Usage scenario for this document (farmers market), 101
- User 111  
 administrative, 44  
 configuring account setting, 113  
 creating account, 229  
 definition, 109  
 overview, 111  
 root, 111  
 user one, 111
- User account 61  
 menu overview, 61
- User group 218  
 finding, 218
- User interface 149  
 translating, 149
- User Interface (UI) 229  
 definition, 229
- User module

- 
- entity type<sup>14</sup>  
overview,
  - User one<sup>229</sup>  
definition,
  - User profile entity type<sup>14</sup>  
overview,
  - User reference field<sup>88</sup>  
adding, 80  
overview,
  - User role<sup>119</sup>  
changing, 112  
creating, 109  
overview,
  - User-entered content<sup>106</sup>  
filtering,
- V**
- View<sup>143</sup>  
adding block display to, 16  
and modular content, 132  
contextual filters part,  
creating, 230  
definition, 132  
display part, 138  
duplicating, 132  
fields part,  
filter criteria part,  
format part, 131  
overview, 132  
parts of, 132  
relationships part, 132  
sort criteria part,  
translating,
  - View mode<sup>230</sup>  
definition, 96  
overview,
  - Views module<sup>143</sup>  
adding to a view, 134  
creating a view, 138  
duplicating a view,  
overview,
  - Views UI module  
overview,
  - Vocabulary<sup>83</sup>  
creating, 230  
definition, 14, 81  
overview,
- W**
- Web installer<sup>28</sup>  
running,  
using to install the core software, 25
  - Web server<sup>22</sup>  
installation requirements,
  - What You See Is What You Get (WYSIWYG)<sup>107</sup>  
configuring editor, 230  
definition,
  - Widget<sup>226, 230</sup>  
definition, 91  
overview,
  - Wizard<sup>230</sup>  
definition,
  - WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get)<sup>107</sup>  
configuring editor, 230  
definition,
- X**
- XSS (Cross-site scripting)<sup>106</sup>  
preventing,

---

# تسویپ مضمونی A.

## A.1. Guide-Wide Attributions

This guide was written by contributors to the Drupal open-source project, and is licensed under the [CC BY-SA 2.0](#) license. See [#### i.1, "#### #####"](#) for more information. Details about the contributors for guide-wide tasks are below. For individual topics, the attributions for writing, editing, and/or translating are at the end of each topic.

### Project coordination of original (English, Drupal 8) text

Writing of the initial version of this guide was coordinated by the following people:

- [Amber Matz](#) - Volunteer coordination and project management
- [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) - Content oversight
- [Joe Shindeler](#) - Content oversight
- [Antje Lorch](#) - Content oversight

### Writing, editing, and testing of original text

The following people contributed to guide-wide writing:

- The glossary was written and adapted by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), with parts from "[Glossary](#)", "[Overview of Configuration \(vs. other types of information\)](#)", and "[Working with breakpoints in Drupal 8](#)", each copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).
- The index was improved and curated by [Anna van Raaphorst](#).
- Topic summaries were written by [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

Guide-wide editing was done by the following people:

- [Amber Matz](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#)

- [Anna van Raaphorst](#)
- [Antje Lorch](#)
- [Balu Ertl](#)
- [Boris Doesborg](#)
- [Charles Leverington](#)
- [chirag shah](#)
- [Grant Dunham](#)
- [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)
- [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#)
- [Jojo Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) — who copy edited the vast majority of the User Guide
- [Kamal Kant Pansari](#) at [Intelliswift](#)
- [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#)
- [Swarad Mokal](#) at [Blisstering Solutions](#)

The content was tested by:

- [Zach Carter](#)
- A workshop organized by the "[Spokane Drupal User Group](#)" on [groups.drupal.org](#), with students from the Web Development Certificate program at [Spokane Community College](#)

## Images

Most of the images in the guide are screen captures from the Drupal software, generated by software written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

The word Drupal, the Druplicon logo (which appears as part of several images throughout the guide), and the Drupal wordmark logo (which is part of the cover image), are [registered trademarks of Dries Buytaert](#).

The cover image is a CC BY-SA 2.0 licensed illustration by [Amanda Luker](#) at [Advomatic](#).

The Anytown Farmers Market logo, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a CC BY-SA 2.0 licensed illustration by Justin Harrell at [Drupalize.Me](#).

The honey bee image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by [John Severns](#) at the [English Wikipedia project](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The farm image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by Xianmin Chang via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The salad image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by [Yinan Chen](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The carrot image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is public domain image [K11611-1](#) by Stephen Ausmus at the [Agricultural Research Service of the United States Department of Agriculture](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

## Translation into Persian

The Persian translation of this guide was coordinated by:

- [Navid Emami](#)